MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN SERIES · VOLUME 48

The Service of Ladies

Ulrich von Liechtenstein

Frauendienst

The Service of Ladies

Part Three: The Second Lady and the Journey of Arthur

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

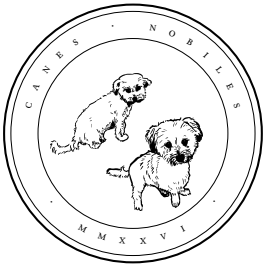


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 48 of the Canes Nobiles Middle High German interlinear texts

The Middle High German text follows Ulrich's von Liechtenstein Frauendienst, herausgegeben von Reinhold Bechstein, Deutsche Dichtungen des Mittelalters 6–7 (Leipzig: F. A. Brockhaus, 1888), strophes 1390–1850

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The strophes are numbered as Lachmann and Bechstein number them, the number in the outer margin; the songs keep Bechstein's Roman numerals, the Büchlein are cited by their own lines, and the letters by his letters. The reading sections and their English heads are this press's.

CONTENTS

I · The Second Lady 7
II · King Arthur Rides Out 30
III · The Round Table 47
IV · The Duke's Welcome 63
V · Lady Honor's Messenger 80
VI · The Ring at Kettlasbrunn 96
VII · The Duke Stops the Jousting 113
VIII · The Tournament Undone 129
IX · Against the Watchman 146
X · The Lady's Word 167
XI · The Death of Duke Frederick 187
XII · Seized at Frauenburg 204
XIII · A Year in Chains 221
XIV · On Choosing Well 238
XV · Goodness for Color 260
XVI · The Heaven of a Lady's Heart 277
XVII · Kissing and Wishing 294
XVIII · The Book of the Service of Ladies 311

Having resolved to serve again, Ulrich chooses the most virtuous lady he knows, rides to her, and tells her his will. He leaves her in high spirits and sings Song XXXII to High Spirit, which she praises as good for dancing. After sitting beside her and talking, he sings Song XXXIII, in which a lady rebukes her knight's too-free speech, and then four more: XXXIV, XXXV against the winter, XXXVI, a dawn song, and XXXVII.

Âventiure, wie der herre Uolrîch im ein ander vrowen nam.
Adventure, how the lord Ulrich himself an other lady took.

Dô ich für wâr mich des bewac, 1390
When I for true myself of-that resolved,

ze denken ich dô sêre pflac,
to think I then sorely took-care,

wer diu frowe möhte sîn,
who the lady might be,

an die ich den dienest mîn
on whom I the service mine

mit triwen legt gar mîne tage.
with faithfulness laid wholly my days.

bî mîner wârheit ich iu sage:
by my truth I you tell:

ich erdâht si gar über elliu lant,
I thought-of them wholly over all lands,

swaz mir dô frowen was bekant.
whatever to-me then of-ladies was known.

1391 Mir was ir einer tugent kunt,
To-me was of-them one's virtue known,

daz mir für wâr bî mîner stunt
that to-me for true in my time

nie wart sô wîplîch wîp erkant.
never was so womanly woman known.

an ir man schœne und güete vant:
in her one beauty and goodness found:

guot gebærde und senfte site,
good bearing and gentle manner,

dâ krœnte sî ir schœne mite.
there crowned she her beauty with.

sî was keusche, ze mâzen balt:
she was chaste, in measure bold:

diu reine lieplîch was gestalt.
the pure-one lovely was shaped.

1392 Ich gedâhte dort, ich gedâhte hie,
I thought there, I thought here,

ich gedâht an dise, ich gedâht an die:
I thought of this-one, I thought of that-one:

swaz mir dô frowen was bekant,
whatever to-me then of-ladies was known,

an der decheiner ich niht vant
in whom none I at-all found

tugende mêre dann an ir.
of-virtues more than in her.

ir sült für wâr gelauben mir:
you shall for true believe me:

si was gar alles wandels frî,
she was wholly of-all blemish free,

ir was guot wîplîch güete bî.
to-her was good womanly goodness by.

Dô daz erdâht gar al mîn lîp, 1393
When that thought-out wholly all my person,

dô nam ich daz vil werde wîp
then took I the very worthy woman

ze frowen in daz hertze mîn.
as lady into the heart mine.

dô ich gedâht dar an stæte sîn,
when I thought there on steadfast be,

dô reit ich balde sâ zehant,
then rode I quickly at-once forthwith,

dâ ich die wolgemuoten vant.
where I the well-spirited-one found.

der tet ich mînen willen kunt
to-her made I my will known

mit worten an der selben stunt.
with words at the same hour.

Swaz sî dô sprach, des sag ich niht; 1394
Whatever she then spoke, of-that tell I not;

wan daz mîn munt iu des wol giht,
but that my mouth you of-that well declares,

daz ich kom von ir hôch gemuot.
that I came from her high spirited.

si het des reht, was sî mir guot,
she had of-that right, was she to-me good,

wan sî mir was für elliu wîp.
for she to-me was before all women.

in freuden reit von ir mîn lîp;
in joys rode from her my person;

in hôhem muot ich von ir schiet
in high spirit I from her parted

und sanc ze dienst ir disiu liet:
and sang to service her these songs:

XXXII. Ein tanzwîse, diu zwô unde zweinzigeste.
XXXII. A dance-tune, the two and twentieth.

Hôher muot, nu wis enpfangen
High spirit, now be received

in mîn herze tûsent stunt!
into my heart thousand times!

Lâ dich bî mir niht belangen:
Let thyself by me not weary:

dû bist mir ein hôher funt.
thou art to-me a high find.

Al mîn vreude was zergangen:
All my joy was passed:

die het trûren mir benomen:
it had sadness from-me taken:

diust mir mit dir her wider komen.
it-is to-me with thee hither back come.

Hôher muot, dâ ich dich funden
High spirit, where I thee found

hân, dar nîge ich immer mê.
have, thither bow I ever more.

Mit dir hân ich überwunden
With thee have I overcome

trûren, daz mir tet ie wê:
sadness, which to-me did ever woe:

Dêst mir gar von dir verswunden.
That-is to-me wholly through thee vanished.

wol mich, wol mich, daz dich ie
well me, well me, that thee ever

mîn minne gernde herze enpfie!
my love desiring heart received!

Hôher muot, dich hât gesendet
High spirit, thee has sent

mir ein wîp, diu êre hât.
to-me a woman, who honor has.

An die hân ich gar gewendet
On her have I wholly turned

mich: daz ist der minne rât.
myself: that is the love's counsel.

Under schilden sper verswendet
Under shields spears used

wirt durch sie von mîner hant,
are for her by my hand,

diu dich ze mir her hât gesant.
who thee to me hither has sent.

Hôher muot, dû und diu minne
High spirit, thou and the love

sult mir helfen dienen ir
shall me help serve her

Sunder valsch mit slehtem sinne:
Without falseness with plain mind:

sô mac wol gelingen mir.
so may well succeed to-me.

Wirt sie mîner triuwen inne,
(If)-becomes she of-my faithfulness aware,

sô tuot mir vil freuden kunt
so makes me many joys known

ir kleinvelhitzerôter munt.
her small-skinned-hot-red mouth.

Hôher muot, nâch dîner lêre
High spirit, after thy teaching

wil ich werben umbe ir lîp.
will I strive for her person.

Sie hât schœne, sie hât êre,
She has beauty, she has honor,

siest ein reine, süeze wîp,
she-is a pure, sweet woman,

Hôch geborn, gar senfte und hêre,
High born, wholly gentle and noble,

guot, in rehter mâze balt:
good, in right measure bold:

ir lîp wîplîchen ist gestalt.
her person womanly is shaped.

Hôher muot, du solt niht eine
High spirit, thou shalt not alone

vogt in mînem herzen sîn:
steward in my heart be:

Mit dir hât dâ stat gemeine
With thee has there place in-common

diu vil liebe vrouwe mîn.
the very dear lady mine.

Sie vil guote, süeze, reine
She very good, sweet, pure

hât die minne mit ir brâht:
has the love with her brought:

sie habent ze hûse dâ gedâht.
they have to house there thought.

Hôher muot, mîn herze grôzet
High spirit, my heart grows-great

und ist worden vreuden junc,
and is become in-joys young,

An die brust ez sêre stôzet,
At the breast it sorely knocks,

hôhe ez springet manegen sprunc.
high it springs many-a leap.

Werdiu liebe drinne bôzet,
Worthy love therein knocks,

diu mich selten ruowen lât,
which me seldom rest lets,

swie hôch doch mîn gemüete stât.
however high yet my mind stands.

Diu liet von rehte si dûhten guot. 1395
The songs by right her seemed good.

daz ieslîch liet sprach Hôher muot,
that each song spoke High spirit,

dâ ez sich huop: des smielte sie,
where it itself raised: at-that smiled she,

wan sîz gehôrt het dâ vor nie.
for she-it heard had there before never.

si sprach: «diu liet sint minneclîch,
she spoke: «the songs are lovely,

getihtet dêswâr meisterlîch:
composed truly masterfully:

si sint für wâr ze tanzen guot,
they are for true to dance good,

si gebent den hertzen hôhen muot.»
they give to-the hearts high spirit.»

1396 Swaz ich ir mêr gedienet hân,
Whatever I her more served have,

und waz si güet an mir begân
and what she goodness on me committed

hât, des wil ich vil verdagen:
has, of-that will I much conceal:

wan einez daz wil ich iu sagen:
but one-thing that will I you tell:

ich sang ir lop in aller zît:
I sang her praise in all time:

ir lop mir hôchgemüete gît,
her praise to-me high-spirit gives,

ir lop mir offte sanfte tuot,
her praise to-me often gently does,

ir lop gibt mir hôhen muot.
her praise gives me high spirit.

1397 Sich fuogt aber von ir tugenden daz,
Itself fitted however from her virtues that,

daz ich ir nâhen bî gesaz
that I her near by sat

und redet mit ir sus unde sô.
and spoke with her thus and so.

ich was si an ze sehen vrô:
I was her at to see glad:

von hertzen ich si gerne sach.
from heart I her gladly saw.

swaz ich des tages gegen ir sprach,
whatever I of-the day toward her spoke,

zehant dô ich dâ von ir schiet,
forthwith when I there from her parted,

ich sanc von ir sâ disiu liet:
I sang of her at-once these songs:

XXXIII. Ein tanzwîse, diu drî und zweinzigeste wîse.
XXXIII. A dance-tune, the three and twentieth tune.

Wizzet, frouwe wol getân,
Know, lady well made,

daz ich ûf genâde hân
that I on grace have

herze und liep an iuch verlân.
heart and love on you left.

daz riet mir ein lieber wân:
that counseled me a dear hope:

durch des rât hân ichz getân
for whose counsel have I-it done

und wil es niht abe gestân:
and will of-it not off stand:

daz lât mir ze guot ergân!
that let me to good go!

«Sît ir dienstes mir bereit,
«Since you of-service to-me ready,

tuot ir daz ûf lônes reht,
(if)-do you that on reward's right,

sô lât mich erkennen daz,
so let me know that,

wie der dienest sî gestalt,
how the service be shaped,

den ich mich sol nemen an,
which I me shall take on,

wie der lôn geheizen sî,
how the reward promised be,

der iu von mir sol geschehen.»
which to-you from me shall happen.»

Vrouwe, ich wil in mînen tagen
Lady, I will in my days

sô nâch iuwern hulden jagen,
so after your favors hunt,

daz ez iu muoz wol behagen,
that it you must well please,

den muot durch iuch hôhe tragen
the spirit for you high bear

und an freuden niht verzagen,
and in joys not despair,

iuwer lop der werlde sagen
your praise to-the world tell

und des lônes noch gedagen.
and of-the reward yet be-silent.

«Sît ir vrô, dar zuo gemeit
«Since you glad, there to cheerful

mir ze dienest, als ir jeht,
to-me to service, as you declare,

ez gefrumt iuch selben baz
it profits you yourself better

danne mich wol tûsentvalt.
than me well thousandfold.

tuot daz schamelop hin dan!
put the shame-praise thither thence!

mirst der spiegel swære bî,
to-me-is the mirror heavy by,

dar inn ich mîn leit sol sehen.»
there in I my sorrow shall see.»

Iuwer lop die wirde hât,
Your praise the worth has,

daz ez wol ze hove gât,
that it well to court goes,

baz dann aller künege wât
better than all kings' clothing

âne scham aldâ bestât.
without shame there stands.

«lieber herre, sælic man,
«dear lord, blessed man,

ir sît spotes alze vrî.
you are of-mockery all-too free.

dêst unprîs, tar ichs gejehen.»
that-is dispraise, (if)-dare I-it declare.»

Diu liet vil maniger niht verstuont, 1398
The songs very many-a-one not understood,

als noch die tumben ofte tuont;
as still the foolish-ones often do;

swer aber was sô rehte wîs,
whoever however was so rightly wise,

der sî verstuont, der gabe in prîs.
he them understood, he gave them praise.

si wâren getihtet wunderlîch,
they were composed wondrously,

die rîme gesetzet meisterlîch:
the rhymes set masterfully:

diu wîse kunde bezzer niht gesîn:
the tune could better not be:

ich redet drinne mit der vrowen mîn.
I spoke therein with the lady mine.

1399 Dar nâch ze rehter zît ich sanc
There after at right time I sang

vier wîse, als mich mîn wille twanc,
four tunes, as me my will compelled,

ze dienest aber der vrowen mîn.
to service again of-the lady mine.

diu wîse kunde niht gesîn
the tune could not be

bezzer noch für wâr diu wort:
better nor for true the words:

die giengen ûz der sinne hort,
they went out-of the senses' hoard,

si lobten die vil guoten hô:
they praised the very good-one high:

nu hœrt! die wîse sprâchen alsô:
now hear! the tunes spoke thus:

XXXIV. Ein tanzwîse, diu vier unde zweinzigest.
XXXIV. A dance-tune, the four and twentieth.

Wîchet umbe balde, sorge und angest, von der strâze,
Yield aside quickly, sorrow and fear, from the road,

lât die wunne bernde freude für!
let the delight bearing joy forth!

Ez enzimt iu beiden ûf mîn triuwe niht ze mâze,
It befits you both on my faithfulness not in measure,

swâ ir mit ir dringet an der tür.
where you with her throng at the door.

Strîchet von dem lande sam der winder von uns hin:
Sweep from the land like the winter from us thither:

lât die freude mit dem sumer in!
let the joy with the summer in!

Hôher muot ist her gewesen von uns lange ellende:
High spirit is hither been from us long abroad:

wol uns des, er ist nu wider komen!
well us of-that, it is now back come!

Nû sol unser swachez trûren haben gar ein ende,
Now shall our base sadness have wholly an end,

sît uns sorge und angest ist benomen.
since to-us sorrow and fear is taken.

Swer nu trûret, derst verzagt an guoten dingen gar:
Whoever now sorrows, he-is despairing in good things wholly:

wünschet, daz er nimmer wol gevar!
wish, that he never well fare!

Niemen kan mit trûren sîner nôt niht überwinden:
No-one can with sadness his distress at-all overcome:

dâ von wil ich hôhes muotes sîn.
there from will I of-high spirit be.

Man muoz mich in hôhem muote und ouch bî freuden vinden:
One must me in high spirit and also by joys find:

alsô wil daz spilnde herze mîn.
so will the sparkling heart mine.

Mirn gestuont der muot sô hôhe nie bî mîner zît.
To-me stood the spirit so high never in my time.

wol ir, diu mir hôchgemüete gît!
well her, who to-me high-spirit gives!

Dêst ein wîp, diu wol ir wîpheit kan mit tugenden krœnen:
That-is a woman, who well her womanhood can with virtues crown:

ir wîplîcher muot ist wandels frî.
her womanly spirit is of-blemish free.

Ichn gesach nie wîbes lîp sô guoten noch sô schœnen:
I saw never woman's person so good nor so beautiful:

ir ist reines wîbes fuore bî.
to-her is pure woman's conduct by.

Siest ein frouwe von geburt: sô ist ir süezer lîp
She-is a lady by birth: so is her sweet person

von ir tugenden ein vil wîplîch wîp.
by her virtues a very womanly woman.

Swer ir reinen, süezen lîp mit mînen ougen sæhe,
Whoever her pure, sweet person with my eyes saw,

den liez ich sô lieplîch schœne sehen,
him let I so lovely beautiful see,

Daz er ir vor allen wîben hôher êren jæhe.
That he her before all women of-higher honors declared.

kund er als ich wîbes tugende spehen,
could he as I woman's virtues espy,

Sô müest er von wârheit sprechen: «seht, daz ist ein wîp,
So must he by truth speak: «see, that is a woman,

der von rehte dienet ritters lîp.»
whom by right serves knight's person.»

XXXV. Ein tanzwîse, diu fünf unde zweinzigest.
XXXV. A dance-tune, the five and twentieth.

Warnet iuch gar, junge und alde,
Beware you wholly, young and old,

gegen dem winder, des ist zît!
toward the winter, of-that is time!

Niemen blôzer vor im halde:
No-one barer before him halt:

er sleht tiefe wunden wît.
he strikes deep wounds wide.

Lât die schilde
Let the shields

stille ligen,
still lie,

sît iu selben kleider milde:
be to-you self of-clothes bountiful:

sô mügt ir im an gesigen.
so may you him over conquer.

Ich wil iuch des besten wîsen:
I will you of-the best instruct:

welt ir vor im sîn behuot,
(if)-will you from him be guarded,

Sô sult ir diu hiuser spîsen:
So shall you the houses provision:

gegen im ist iu niht sô guot.
against him is to-you nothing so good.

Swer mit witzen
Whoever with wits

nû niht vert,
now not goes,

sît er wil diu hûs besitzen,
since he will the houses possess,

der ist von im unernert.
he is by him unsaved.

Für sîn stürmen, für sîn slîchen,
For his storming, for his creeping,

für sîn ungefüge drô,
for his monstrous threat,

Sul wir in die stuben wîchen,
Shall we into the parlors yield,

dâ mit wîben wesen vrô.
there with women be glad.

Wîbes güete
Woman's goodness

dêst ein dach,
that-is a roof,

daz man nie für ungemüete
that one never against ill-humor

alsô guotes niht gesach.
so good nothing saw.

Aller guoten wîbe güete
Of-all good women goodness

müeze immer freuden pflegen.
may ever of-joys take-care.

Vor ir zürnen mich behüte,
From their wrath me guard,

got: daz ist mîn morgensegen.
God: that is my morning-blessing.

Guotes wîbes
Good woman's

werdekeit
worthiness

ist für wâr gar mînes lîbes
is for true wholly of-my person

hœhster trôst für senendiu leit.
highest comfort for longing sorrows.

Mînes herzen freuden lêre
Of-my heart's joys teaching

ist ein süezer wîbes lîp.
is a sweet woman's person.

Diust mîn trôst für herzen sêre.
She-is my comfort for heart's pain.

siest für wâr ein wîplîch wîp
she-is for true a womanly woman

Unde ein frouwe
And a lady

maneger tugent.
of-many virtue.

swanne ich in ir ougen schouwe
whenever I in her eyes behold

mich, sô blüet mir freuden jugent.
me, so blooms to-me of-joys youth.

XXXVI. Daz ist ein tagewîse.
XXXVI. That is a dawn-song.

«Got willekomen, herre,
«God welcome, lord,

mîn friunt, geselle, lieber man!
my friend, companion, dear man!

Mîn trûren daz ist verre,
My sadness that is far,

sît ich dich umbevangen hân.
since I thee embraced have.

Dû bist mir vor allen dingen süeze;
Thou art to-me before all things sweet;

dâ von ich dich herzenlîchen grüeze.
there from I thee heartily greet.

nu küsse tûsent stunde mich!
now kiss thousand times me!

sô küsse ich zwir als ofte dich.»
so kiss I twice as often thee.»

«Dîn wîplîch friundes grüezen,
«Thy womanly friend's greeting,

dîn küssen und dîn umbevanc
thy kissing and thy embrace

Kan sich sô lieplîch süezen,
Can itself so lovingly sweeten,

daz mir diu wîle nimmer lanc
that to-me the while never long

Bî dir wirt, vil herzenliebiu frouwe.
By thee becomes, very heart-dear lady.

al mîn freude ich an dir einer schouwe.
all my joy I in thee alone behold.

dîn lieber man, mîn liebez wîp:
thy dear man, my dear woman:

daz sîn wir beidiu und ein lîp.»
that are we both and one body.»

Nâch disem friundes gruoze
After this friend's greeting

mit triuten wart geküsset vil.
with caresses was kissed much.

Diu selbe süeze unmuoze
The same sweet busyness

in beiden riet ein minnespil.
to-them both counseled a love-play.

In dem spil ir beider herze jâhen,
In the game their both hearts declared,

dô sie in den ougen reht ersâhen
when they in the eyes rightly saw

ir lieplîch minnevarwen schîn,
their lovely love-colored shine,

daz er wær ir und sie wær sîn.
that he were hers and she were his.

Nâch disem spil sie lâgen
After this game they lay

geslozzen wol nâch friundes site.
locked well after friend's custom.

Ir beider munde pflâgen,
Their both mouths took-care,

dâ sich diu liebe erzeiget mite.
where itself the love shows with.

Ir vil lûter liebe slôz diu minne
Their very pure love locked the love

mit der triuwe vaste zeinem sinne
with the faithfulness fast to-one mind

innerhalp ir herzen tür:
within their heart's door:

dâ rigelt sich diu stæte für.
there bolts itself the steadfastness before.

In minnen paradîse
In love's paradise

ir beider lîp mit vreuden lac.
their both person with joys lay.

Dar sleich ein maget lîse,
Thither crept a maiden softly,

diu sprach: «nu wol ûf, ez ist tac!»
she spoke: «now well up, it is day!»

Von dem worte ir ougen über wielen,
From the word their eyes over welled,

daz die trehen in ûf diu wangen vielen.
that the tears to-them onto the cheeks fell.

dô wart geküsset tûsent stunt
then was kissed thousand times

ir ougen, kinne, wengel, munt.
their eyes, chin, cheeks, mouth.

Sus wold der tac sie scheiden:
Thus would the day them part:

daz tet in herzenlîchen wê.
that did to-them heartily woe.

Dô riet diu minne in beiden,
Then counseled the love to-them both,

ein süezez spil verenden ê.
a sweet game to-end before.

Ein ander siez niht baz erbieten mohten:
One other they-it not better offer could:

mit armen und mit beinen lac geflohten
with arms and with legs lay entwined

ir beider lîp. dô sprach diu maget:
their both person. then spoke the maiden:

«iu beiden ez ze leide taget.»
«to-you both it to sorrow dawns.»

Mit linden wîzen armen
With soft white arms

beslozzen lac des ritters lîp.
enclosed lay the knight's person.

sie sprach: «lâ dich erbarmen,
she spoke: «let thee pity,

guot vriunt, mich vreuden armez wîp:
good friend, me of-joys poor woman:

füere mich in dînem herzen binnen.»
carry me in thy heart within.»

«frouwe, ich minne dich mit friundes sinnen.
«lady, I love thee with friend's senses.

du bist vogt in dem herzen mîn:
thou art steward in the heart mine:

sam bin ich in dem herzen dîn.»
likewise am I in the heart thine.»

XXXVII. Ein tanzwîse, diu sehs unde zweinzigest.
XXXVII. A dance-tune, the six and twentieth.

Wol mich immer! mîn gemüete
Well me ever! my mind

hât ein guot wîp mit ir güete
has a good woman with her goodness

hôh in spilnde freude brâht.
high into sparkling joy brought.

Diust mîn wunne, diust mîn frouwe:
She-is my delight, she-is my lady:

al mîn freude ich an ir schouwe.
all my joy I in her behold.

got der hât mich wol bedâht
God he has me well provided

Mit sô reinem, süezen wîbe.
With so pure, sweet woman.

ich vertrîbe
I drive-away

trûren mit ir mînem lîbe:
sadness with her from-my person:

hôhen muot ich dâ zir hol.
high spirit I there from-her fetch.

Wol mich, wol mich iemer mêre
Well me, well me ever more

des, daz sie hât tugent und êre,
of-that, that she has virtue and honor,

güete, schœne volleclîch:
goodness, beauty fully:

Des leb ich in hôhem muote.
Of-that live I in high spirit.

got der füege mirz ze guote!
God he grant me-it to good!

nie man wart sô freuden rîch,
never man became so of-joys rich,

Als ich bin von der vil süezen.
As I am from the very sweet-one.

trûren büezen
sadness amend

kan sie mit ir zühten süezen:
can she with her courtesies sweet:

ir gruoz tuot mich freuden vol.
her greeting makes me of-joys full.

Wol, wol, wol mich, daz die wîsen
Well, well, well me, that the wise

müezen sie von rehte prîsen,
must her by right praise,

daz sie daz gedienet hât!
that she that deserved has!

Dâ von kumt mir ofte tougen
There from comes to-me often secretly

freuden tou ûz dâ zen ougen,
of-joy dew out there at-the eyes,

daz ûz herzen grunde gât.
that out-of heart's ground goes.

Ir lîp ist mîn freuden lêre.
Her person is my joys' teaching.

swar ich kêre,
wherever I turn,

ich bin vrô des, daz ir êre
I am glad of-that, that her honor

hât behuot sich, als sie sol.
has guarded itself, as she shall.

Ulrich arms for a new journey in a scarlet surcoat, a gold crown on his helmet, and a shield hung with bells. He jousts with Konrad of Stretwich, Konrad of Saurau, and Christian of Pux, and at Eppenstein Leutfried, whom he calls Calogreant, welcomes him as King Arthur and jousts with him. At Krabat he camps in tents on a meadow, jousts again, and composes the outriding Song XXXVIII before riding on to Bruck.

1400 …
(lacuna)

…
(lacuna)

…
(lacuna)

die wârn lieht, vor rost behuot:
they were bright, from rust guarded:

dar über zwên hurtenir von horn.
there over two knee-guards of horn.

man stricte mir dar umb ouch zwên sporn,
one tied to-me there about also two spurs,

der varbe lieht von golde schein.
whose color bright of gold shone.

sus wâren gewâpent mir diu bein.
thus were armed to-me the legs.

1401 Dô leit ich einen halsperc an
Then laid I a hauberk on

vesten, starc, lieht, wol getân,
firm, strong, bright, well made,

dar über eine blaten guot.
there over a plate good.

ûf ritterschaft stuont al mîn muot.
on chivalry stood all my spirit.

mîn wâpenroc was scharlachrôt,
my surcoat was scarlet-red,

gefurrirt wol, als ich gebôt,
lined well, as I commanded,

mit einem zendâl gel gevar,
with a taffeta yellow colored,

gehouwen meisterlîche gar.
cut-out masterfully wholly.

Er was vil volleclîchen lanc: 1402
It was very fully long:

sîn lenge unz ûf die erden swanc.
its length until onto the earth swung.

zwelf gêren wâren drin gesniten
twelve gores were therein cut

durch sîne wîte nâch meisters siten.
for its width after master's customs.

er was gezegelt über diu knie,
it was tailed over the knees,

mit borten beidiu dort und hie
with bands both there and here

gegetert für wâr meisterlîch:
latticed for true masterfully:

die borten wâren kosterîch.
the bands were costly.

1403 Über den wâpenroc zehant
Over the surcoat forthwith

gurt ich ein gürtel breit als ein hant.
girt I a belt broad as a hand.

des porte was grüen als ein gras:
whose band was green as a grass:

mit golde er wol beslagen was.
with gold it well studded was.

man sach ouch an dem buosem mîn
one saw also on the bosom mine

von golde ein kostlîch heftelîn,
of gold a costly little-brooch,

vil wol geworht, envollen breit.
very well wrought, in-full broad.

mîn hertze was frô, der lîp gemeit.
my heart was glad, the person joyful.

1404 Dô zôch man dar daz orsse mîn:
Then led one thither the horse mine:

daz muost ouch wol verdecket sîn
that must also well covered be

mit scharlach rôt, reht als ich schuof.
with scarlet red, right as I ordered.

diu decke reicht unz ûf den huof:
the covering reached until onto the hoof:

si was dem wâpenroc gelîch
it was to-the surcoat alike

gefurrirt unde porten rîch,
lined and of-bands rich,

gegetert und gehouwen sô,
latticed and cut-out so,

daz ich sîn was ze sehen frô.
that I of-it was to see glad.

Ûf daz örss saz ich zehant. 1405
On the horse sat I forthwith.

den helm ich ze houbet bant:
the helmet I to head bound:

der was gezimirt wunneclîch
it was crested delightfully

mit einer wæl von golde rîch:
with a crown of gold rich:

die sach man vil wol geortert sîn:
it saw one very well pointed be:

diu wæl stuont ûf dem helme mîn:
the crown stood on the helmet mine:

dar umb ein kranz von scharlach gie,
there about a wreath of scarlet went,

zerhouwen vil wol dort und hie.
slashed very well there and here.

Die zegel wâren ze rehte lanc: 1406
The tails were by right long:

ir lenge unz ûf diu venster swanc,
their length until onto the windows swung,

diu wol mit valden was behuot.
which well with folds was guarded.

an ieslîch ort ein koste guot
on each end a setting good

von pfânsvedern gebunden was:
of peacock-feathers bound was:

der helm was lieht alsam ein glas,
the helmet was bright like a glass,

dâ man vil schône sich inne ersiht:
where one very beautifully oneself therein sees:

der helm was dem gelîche lieht.
the helmet was to-that alike bright.

1407 Den schilt ze halse nam ich dô:
The shield to neck took I then:

ich was gar sîner veste vrô.
I was wholly of-its firmness glad.

er was dem wâpenroc gelîch:
it was to-the surcoat alike:

von scharlach rôt, mit porten rîch
of scarlet red, with bands rich

was er gegetert und vil wol
was it latticed and very well

gehouwen, er was schellen vol
cut-out, it was of-bells full

gehangen, der klanc lûte erklanc,
hung, whose sound loudly rang,

swanne ich in gegen der tyoste swanc.
whenever I it toward the joust swung.

1408 Dar nâch gab man mir ein sper
There after gave one me a spear

ze mâzen grôz. dô kom ouch her
in measure great. then came also hither

gein mir von Stretwich her Kuonrât.
toward me of Stretwich sir Konrad.

des lîp begie nie ritters tât.
whose person committed never knight's deed.

ez stuont für wâr alsô sîn muot:
it stood for true so his spirit:

er warp in aller zît umb guot,
he strove in all time for goods,

swie er mohte, sus unde sô:
however he might, thus and so:

in huop umb frowen lop unhô.
him lifted for ladies' praise little.

Doch wart sîn tyost dâ guot genuoc. 1409
Yet was his joust there good enough.

sîn orss in mir sô nâhen truoc,
his horse him to-me so near carried,

daz er mir mit der tyoste sîn
that he me with the joust his

stach an daz kinne den helm mîn,
thrust at the chin the helmet mine,

sô daz diu tyost vil lûte erhal.
so that the joust very loudly resounded.

von beiden speren drumzen val
from both spears splinters' fall

sach man und hôrte helme klanc.
saw one and heard helmets' clang.

mînes speres ort dâ hôhe spranc.
my spear's point there high sprang.

Sâ dô diu schœne tyost geschach, 1410
At-once when the beautiful joust happened,

vil schône ich gegen mir komen sach
very beautifully I toward me come saw

für wâr einen rehte biderben man:
for true a rightly worthy man:

der fuort alsölich gezimir an,
who wore such crest on,

daz Fêravîz Antschevîn
that Feirefiz Angevin

gezimirt moht niht schôner sîn
crested might not more-beautiful be

noch Aroffel von Persyâ,
nor Aroffel of Persia,

danne er gezimirt was aldâ.
than he crested was there.

1411 Ich wil mêr von dem biderben sagen:
I will more of the worthy-one tell:

er was für wâr bî sînen tagen
he was for true in his days

ze mâzen tump, ze mâzen karc,
in measure foolish, in measure stingy,

ze mâzen milt, ze mâzen arc,
in measure generous, in measure mean,

ze mâzen trûric unde frô:
in measure sad and glad:

des stuont sîn lop von schulden hô.
of-that stood his praise by rights high.

er het von rehte ritters prîs.
he had by right knight's prize.

er kom gein mir in engels wîs.
he came toward me in angel's manner.

1412 Er het vil biderbes hertzen rât.
He had very worthy heart's counsel.

er hiez von Sûrouwe Kuonrât.
he was-called of Saurau Konrad.

er fuort ein schône geverbtez sper.
he carried a beautifully colored spear.

dô ich in sach sô snelle her
when I him saw so swiftly hither

und ouch sô ritterlîchen komen,
and also so knightly come,

mîn orss mit sporn wart genomen.
my horse with spurs was taken.

mit willen wir zesamen triben:
with will we together drove:

diu sper verstochen aldâ beliben.
the spears used-up there remained.

Diu tyost wart ritterlîch geriten 1413
The joust was knightly ridden

sunder vælen und versniten
without missing and cut-through

an beiden helmen diu kollir.
on both helmets the collars.

ir sult für wâr gelouben mir,
you shall for true believe me,

daz ich nie schœner tyost gesach,
that I never more-beautiful joust saw,

danne von uns beiden dâ geschach.
than by us both there happened.

diu sper unz ûf die hende sich kluben,
the spears until onto the hands themselves split,

dâ von die spritzelen hôhe stuben.
there from the splinters high flew.

Diu tyost dâ ritterlîch ergie. 1414
The joust there knightly went.

nû sult ir gern hœren, wie
now shall you gladly hear, how

gein mir dô kom der junge man,
toward me then came the young man,

von Priks mîn her Cristân.
of Pux my sir Christian.

der kom sô snelle gegen mir her,
he came so swiftly toward me hither,

daz mir vil kûme wart daz sper
that to-me very hardly came the spear

gegen der tyost dâ in die hant:
toward the joust there into the hand:

sô snelle kom er mich an gerant.
so swiftly came he me at running.

1415 Von sîner gæhe er vælte mîn.
From his haste he missed me.

dô stach ich im durch den schilt sîn
then thrust I him through the shield his

daz sper, daz ez vil lût erhal,
the spear, that it very loudly resounded,

sô daz von der tyost dâ zetal
so that from the joust there down

die drumzen vielen ûf daz gras.
the splinters fell onto the grass.

sâ dô diu tyost ergangen was,
at-once when the joust gone was,

dô bant ich abe den helm mîn
then bound I off the helmet mine

und wolt ouch dâ niht lenger sîn.
and would also there not longer be.

1416 Ich reit von danne sâ zehant
I rode from thence at-once forthwith

gein Eppensteine, dâ ich vant
toward Eppenstein, where I found

hern Liutfrit halten ûf dem plân,
sir Leutfried halting on the plain,

gezimirt als einen rîchen man.
crested like a mighty man.

ich het in Kalocrîant genant.
I had him Calogreant named.

der rîche sprach dô sâ zehant:
the mighty-one spoke then at-once forthwith:

«hie kumt der werde künic Artûs
«here comes the worthy king Arthur

und wil mich heimsuochen ze hûs.
and will me visit at house.

Sîn suochen ist her al mîn ger. 1417
His visiting is hither all my desire.

nu reiche mir her ein starkez sper!
now hand me hither a strong spear!

ich sol enpfâhen in alsô,
I shall receive him so,

dâ von die sprîzeln vliegen hô.
there from the splinters fly high.

er wil an mir der frowen sîn
he will in me the lady his

dienen; nu ist der wille mîn,
serve; now is the will mine,

daz unser tyost hie werde guot:
that our joust here be good:

daz ist mîn wille und ouch mîn muot.»
that is my will and also my spirit.»

Ein sper nam er sâ in die hant. 1418
A spear took he at-once into the hand.

dô ich in sô bereiten vant,
when I him so ready found,

des freut ich mich und sprach alsô:
of-that rejoiced I myself and spoke thus:

«dêswâr ich bin des harte frô,
«truly I am of-that very glad,

daz her Liutfrit hie tyoste gert:
that sir Leutfried here of-joust desires:

er ist ein edel ritter wert.»
he is a noble knight worthy.»

dô freut ich mich ze gesellen sîn;
then rejoiced I myself as companion his;

dô bant ich ûf den helm mîn.
then bound I on the helmet mine.

1419 Wir wâren bêde hôchgemuot:
We were both high-spirited:

des wart diu tyost für wâr dâ guot.
of-that became the joust for true there good.

zwei sper dâ wurden wol verswant;
two spears there were well used-up;

dar nâch wir schieden dan zehant.
there after we parted thence forthwith.

mit freuden wir von danne riten,
with joys we from thence rode,

gekleidet wol nâch ritters siten,
dressed well after knight's customs,

ze Krâbat ûf den anger breit,
to Krabat onto the meadow broad,

dâ mir diu herberge was bereit.
where to-me the lodging was ready.

1420 Mir wâren geslagen zwei gezelt
To-me were pitched two tents

und vier hütte ûf pluomen velt,
and four huts on flowers' field,

ûf einen anger wunneclîch.
on a meadow delightful.

di naht wâr wir dâ freuden rîch.
the night were we there of-joys rich.

sâ dô der ander tac her gie,
at-once when the second day hither went,

dô zogten zuo uns dort unde hie
then drew to us there and here

gezimirt ritter mit den spern:
crested knights with the spears:

di hôrt man alle tyoste gern.
them heard one all of-joust desire.

Ein messe hete wir vernomen, 1421
A mass had we heard,

ê daz die ritter wâren komen.
before that the knights were come.

zehant ich wâppen mich began:
forthwith I arm myself began:

ich wart gezimirt als ein man,
I was crested as a man,

der von einer vrowen guot
who from a lady good

ist ritterlîchen hôchgemuot;
is knightly high-spirited;

alsô was ouch dâ mîn lîp
so was also there my person

vil hôchgemuot durch ein wîp.
very high-spirited for a woman.

Der reinen wolt ich dienen dâ: 1422
The pure-one would I serve there:

dô bant ich ûf den helm sâ,
then bound I on the helmet at-once,

ein sper nam ich in die hant,
a spear took I into the hand,

ich reit, dâ ich tyostiren vant.
I rode, where I jousting found.

dâ wart getjostiret ritterlîch:
there was jousted knightly:

für wâr manic puneiz muotesrîch
for true many-a charge of-spirit-rich

wart dâ mit ritters kunst geriten,
was there with knight's skill ridden,

mit speres ort kollir versniten.
with spear's point collars cut.

1423 Ich hân an disem buoche vil
I have in this book much

von tyost gesagt: dâ von ich wil
of joust said: there from I will

ez iu kürzen, swâ ich kan,
it you shorten, wherever I can,

und wil si ungenennet lân,
and will them unnamed leave,

die schône ir frowen dienten dâ
who beautifully their ladies served there

und sît vil offte anderswâ.
and since very often elsewhere.

si wâren ritterlîch gemuot:
they were knightly spirited:

des wart dâ vil manic puneiz guot.
of-that was there very many-a charge good.

1424 Ich sage iu, wie ez dâ geschach:
I tell you, how it there happened:

ê daz ich siben sper verstach,
before that I seven spears used-up,

dô wâren driuzehen sper ûf mir
then were thirteen spears on me

verstochen, daz geloubet ir!
used-up, that believe you!

dar nâch dô reit ich sâ von dan.
there after then rode I at-once from thence.

zehant ich tihten dô began,
forthwith I compose then began,

dô ich alsô von danne schiet,
when I so from thence parted,

disiu ritterlîchen liet:
these knightly songs:

XXXVIII. Ein ûzreise, diu ander.
XXXVIII. An outriding-song, the second.

Êren gernde ritter, lât iuch schouwen
Honor desiring knights, let yourselves see

under helme dienen werden vrouwen.
under helmets serve worthy ladies.

Welt ir die zît vertrîben
(If)-will you the time pass

ritterlîch, êrenrîch
knightly, honor-rich

wert ir von guoten wîben.
become you by good women.

Ir sult hôchgemuot sîn under schilde,
You shall high-spirited be under shield,

wol gezogen, küene, blîde, milde!
well bred, bold, blithe, bountiful!

Tuot ritterschaft mit sinnen
Do chivalry with senses

und sît vrô, minnet hô:
and be glad, love high:

sô mügt ir lop gewinnen.
so may you praise win.

Denket an der werden wîbe grüezen,
Think of the worthy women's greeting,

wie sich daz kan guoten vriunden süezen.
how itself that can to-good friends sweeten.

Swen vrouwen munt wol grüezet,
Whom lady's mouth well greets,

derst gewert, swes er gert:
he-is granted, whatever he desires:

sîn freude ist im gesüezet.
his joy is to-him sweetened.

Swer mit schilt sich decken wil vor schanden,
Whoever with shield himself cover will from disgraces,

der sol ez dem lîbe wol enblanden.
he shall it to-the body well impose.

Des schiltes ampt gît êre.
The shield's office gives honor.

im ist bereit werdekeit:
to-him is ready worthiness:

sie muoz abr kosten sêre.
it must however cost sorely.

Manlîch herze vindet man bî schilde:
Manly heart finds one by shield:

zeglîch muot muoz sîn dem schilde wilde.
cowardly spirit must be to-the shield strange.

Gein wîben valsch der blecket,
Toward women falseness he shows,

swer in hât, an der stat,
whoever it has, in the place,

dâ man mit schilden decket.
where one with shields covers.

Tuo her schilt! man sol mich hiute schouwen
Bring hither shield! one shall me today see

dienen mîner herzenlieben frouwen.
serve my heart-dear lady.

Ich muoz ir minne erwerben
I must her love win

unde ir gruoz oder ich muoz
and her greeting or I must

gar in ir dienst verderben.
wholly in her service perish.

Ich wil sie mit dienste bringen inne,
I will her with service bring aware,

daz ich sie baz dan mich selben minne.
that I her better than me self love.

Ûf mir muoz sper erkrachen.
On me must spear crack.

nû tuo her sperâ sper!
now bring hither spear-ho spear!

des twinget mich ir lachen.
to-that compels me her laughing.

Diu liet gesungen wurden vil. 1425
The songs sung were much.

für wâr ich iu daz sagen wil:
for true I you that tell will:

bî den lieden wart geriten
by the songs was ridden

manic tyost nâch ritters siten.
many-a joust after knight's customs.

diu liet man vil gerne sanc,
the songs one very gladly sang,

dâ fiwer ûz tyost von helm spranc:
where fire out-of joust from helmet sprang:

si dûhten manigen ritter guot,
they seemed to-many-a knight good,

si rieten ritterlîchen muot.
they counseled knightly spirit.

1426 Gegen Prucke wir zogten dô:
Toward Bruck we drew then:

wir sungen unde wâren frô.
we sang and were glad.

mit mir reit manic ritter guot:
with me rode many-a knight good:

si wâren ritterlîch gemuot.
they were knightly spirited.

die naht ze Prucke wir beliben.
the night at Bruck we stayed.

dô diu naht dô wart vertriben
when the night then was driven-away

von des liehten tages schîn,
by the bright day's shine,

dô wâppent ich aber den lîp mîn.
then armed I again the person mine.

Whoever breaks three spears on Arthur without missing wins a seat at the Round Table. Of the first ten knights who meet Ulrich after Bruck none wins one, and at Kapfenberg his Lancelot, Heinrich of Spiegelberg, misses on his third joust. After a night at Krieglach, Erchenger, whom he names Iwein, breaks six spears with him without missing at Hohenwang, and beyond the Semmering Albero of Arnstein, his Segremors, wins his seat the same way. At Neunkirchen the jousting lasts until evening. On Sunday he rides toward the Neustadt in procession, with banners, drums, flutes, and fiddlers, and a messenger of the prince of Austria welcomes him, thanks him for coming from paradise, and says the prince wishes to break three spears with him for a seat at the Round Table.

Gezimirt kom ich dô geriten, 1427
Crested came I then ridden,

dâ mîn vil schône het gebiten
where me very beautifully had awaited

von Krotendorf mîn her Herman
of Krottendorf my sir Hermann

mich rant dâ ritterlîchen an.
me ran there knightly at.

als tet von Mûre her Dietmâr:
as did of Mure sir Dietmar:

der kom ouch schône gein mir dar.
he came also beautifully toward me thither.

die bêde verstâchen dâ vier sper
they both used-up there four spears

ûf mir und ich wan eines mêr.
on me and I but one more.

1428 Dannoch wâren ir ähte dâ,
Still were of-them eight there,

die mich vil schône bestuonden sâ:
who me very beautifully attacked at-once:

von der tyost wart drumzen val;
from the joust was splinters' fall;

maniges tyost dâ lût erhal
many-a-one's joust there loudly resounded

und ouch ûf helmen lût erclanc.
and also on helmets loudly rang.

ir lîp dâ wol nâch êren ranc;
their person there well after honors strove;

si wâren hôhes muotes vol:
they were of-high spirit full:

dâ von geriet ir tiost dâ wol.
there from turned-out their joust there well.

1429 Noch schiet ich âne gesellen dan,
Yet parted I without companions thence,

daz ir deheiner dâ gewan
that of-them none there won

von reht ze der tavelrunde stat.
by right at the Round-Table place.

als iu mîn munt gesagt ê hât:
as you my mouth told before has:

swer sunder vælen wol driu sper
whoever without missing well three spears

mit mir verstach, seht, daz was der,
with me used-up, see, that was he,

den man het verre deste baz:
whom one had far the better:

von reht ze der tavelrunde er saz.
by right at the Round-Table he sat.

Von danne reit gewâpent ich 1430
From thence rode armed I

gein Capfenberc, dâ schône sich
toward Kapfenberg, where beautifully himself

gezimirt het durch vrowen bet
crested had for ladies' request

von Spiegelberc her Lantzilet;
of Spiegelberg sir Lancelot;

her Heinrîch was sîn rehter nam.
sir Heinrich was his right name.

er het vil reines ritters scham,
he had very pure knight's shame,

er schamt sich aller missetât:
he shamed himself of-all misdeed:

dâ von er lop erwarben hât.
there from he praise won has.

Er hielt mit ûf gerihtem sper: 1431
He halted with up raised spear:

ein schœne tyost was al sîn ger.
a beautiful joust was all his desire.

durch vrowen er dâ tyoste gert:
for ladies he there of-joust desired:

der wart er von mir wol gewert.
of-that was he by me well granted.

er het vil ritterlîche gir
he had very knightly desire

ûf ritterschaft. dô gegen mir.
for chivalry. then toward me.

den helm mîn ich dô ûf bant,
the helmet mine I then up bound,

ich nam ein sper sâ in die hant.
I took a spear at-once into the hand.

1432 Diu orss mit sporn wir nâmen dô.
The horses with spurs we took then.

diu tyost wart dâ geriten sô,
the joust was there ridden so,

daz fiur ûz beiden helmen spranc.
that fire out-of both helmets sprang.

der spere krach, der helme klanc
the spears' crash, the helmets' clang

dâ lût nâch tyost sit erhal.
there loudly after joust's custom resounded.

von starken speren drumzen val
from strong spears splinters' fall

vielen ûf die erden nider.
fell onto the earth down.

zwei andriu sper gab man uns wider.
two other spears gave one us back.

1433 Dâ mit wart ritterlîch geriten
There with was knightly ridden

und vælen bêdenthalp vermiten.
and missing on-both-sides avoided.

dar nâch diu drite dyost geschach,
there after the third joust happened,

sô daz ich ritterlîch verstach
so that I knightly used-up

ein sper dâ an dem helm sîn;
a spear there on the helmet his;

sîn dritiu tyost dâ vælte mîn:
his third joust there missed me:

daz was dem hôchgemuoten leit,
that was to-the high-spirited-one sorrow,

in zorne ez wart von im gekleit.
in anger it was by him lamented.

Dô bant er abe den helm sîn. 1434
Then bound he off the helmet his.

daz vierde sper in die hant mîn
the fourth spear into the hand mine

nam ich. dô kom gegen mir her
took I. then came toward me hither

Ortolf wol nâch tyoste ger:
Ortolf well after joust eager:

von Kapfenberc was er genant.
of Kapfenberg was he named.

er fuort ein sper in sîner hant,
he carried a spear in his hand,

daz er dâ ritterlîch verstach;
that he there knightly used-up;

daz mîn diu tyost ouch zebrach.
that mine the joust also broke.

Diu ander tyost sô wart geriten, 1435
The second joust so was ridden,

daz von uns beiden wart vermiten
that by us both was avoided

helme klanc und speres krach:
helmets' clang and spear's crash:

diu sper man beidiu ganz dâ sach.
the spears one both whole there saw.

den helm band ich abe dô sâ,
the helmet bound I off then at-once,

ich wart entwâpent snelle dâ,
I was disarmed quickly there,

dar nâch vil ritterlîch gekleit.
there after very knightly clad.

mit freuden ich von dannen reit
with joys I from thence rode

1436 In hôhem muot ze Krüegelach.
In high spirit to Krieglach.

die naht het ich guot gemach.
the night had I good ease.

des andern morgens harte fruo
of-the second morning very early

ein pfaffe bereite sich dar zuo,
a priest made-ready himself there to,

daz er ein schœne messe sanc.
that he a beautiful mass sang.

dar nâch vil schire was unlanc
there after very soon was not-long

enpeiz ich unde reit von dan,
breakfasted I and rode from thence,

dâ mich bestuont mîn her Ywân.
where me attacked my sir Iwein.

1437 Sîn rehter nam was Erchengêr,
His right name was Erchenger,

sîn hûs genant was Landesêr.
his house named was Landesere.

ze Hôhenwanc er gegen mir reit,
at Hohenwang he toward me rode,

gezimirt wol in wâpenkleit.
crested well in coats-of-arms.

ich wilz iuch kurzlîch wizen lân:
I will-it you briefly know let:

sehs sper ich dâ und her Ywân
six spears I there and sir Iwein

verstâchen sunder vælen gar:
used-up without missing wholly:

bî mîner höfscheit, daz ist wâr.
by my courtliness, that is true.

Dô vant ich tyost dâ niht mêr. 1438
Then found I joust there not more.

mit mir reit danne her Erchengêr
with me rode thence sir Erchenger

und ander vil manic ritter guot:
and other very many-a knight good:

wir wâren ritterlîch gemuot.
we were knightly spirited.

über den Semernic wir dô
over the Semmering we then

zogten unde wâren frô:
drew and were glad:

ze Glogentz wir die naht beliben.
at Gloggnitz we the night stayed.

dô von dem tage diu wart vertriben,
when by the day it was driven-away,

Des andern morgens harte fruo 1439
Of-the second morning very early

her Segremors der zogte zuo:
sir Segremors he drew to:

her Alber was sîn rehter nam,
sir Albero was his right name,

von Arnsteine. ritters scham
of Arnstein. knight's shame

het er unde ouch ritters zuht:
had he and also knight's courtesy:

diu schande het ouch von im fluht.
the disgrace had also from him flight.

er was vor wârem schelten vrî:
he was from true reproach free:

der wîsen lop im wonte bî.
the wise-ones' praise to-him dwelt by.

1440 Er wart von mir enpfangen wol,
He was by me received well,

als man friunt enpfâhen sol.
as one friend receive shall.

dô sprach er: «herre künic Artûs,
then spoke he: «lord king Arthur,

ich bin zuo iu dâ her von hûs
I am to you here hither from house

gevaren und wil an iuch gern,
gone and will of you desire,

daz ir mich grüezet mit den spern.
that you me greet with the spears.

ich wil gein iu hie schône driu sper
I will toward you here beautifully three spears

verstechen, herre, daz ist mîn ger.»
use-up, lord, that is my desire.»

1441 Ich sprach: «des sît von mir gewert
I spoke: «of-that be by me granted

und alles, des ir von mir gert.»
and of-all, that you from me desire.»

zehant ich wâppen mich began:
forthwith I arm myself began:

als tet ouch sich der biderbe man.
as did also himself the worthy man.

wir wurden kurzlîch wol bereit
we became shortly well ready

in wunneclîchiu wâppenkleit.
in delightful coats-of-arms.

ûf daz velt wir zogten dô:
onto the field we drew then:

uns stuont der muot zwâre hô.
to-us stood the spirit truly high.

Wir nâmen zwei wol starkiu sper; 1442
We took two well strong spears;

ein schœn tyost was unser ger:
a beautiful joust was our desire:

diu örss mit sporn wir vaste triben.
the horses with spurs we fast drove.

diu sper ouch dâ niht ganz beliben;
the spears also there not whole remained;

von den beiden wart dâ krach,
from the both was there crash,

die drumzen man ûf vliegen sach.
the splinters one up fly saw.

wir ruoften beide: «sperâ sper!
we called both: «spear-ho spear!

diu sint dâ hin: zwei andriu her!»
those are there gone: two others hither!»

Diu wurden uns dâ schier gegeben. 1443
They were to-us there quickly given.

ein ander tyost sach man uns heben:
an other joust saw one us raise:

diu wart mit kunst dâ wol geriten
it was with skill there well ridden

und beidiu collir wert versniten.
and both collars were cut.

an beiden hälsen wart dâ mâl.
on both necks was there mark.

nâch spere krach diu tyost erhal:
after spear's crash the joust resounded:

di drumzen vielen ûf den klê,
the splinters fell onto the clover,

diu tyost tet dâ uns beiden wê.
the joust did there to-us both woe.

1444 Diu dritte tyost sich alsô reit,
The third joust itself so rode,

daz sich der hurt dâ kûme vermeit.
that itself the charge there hardly avoided.

er kom sô nâhen mir geriten,
he came so near me ridden,

daz kûme der hurt wart dâ vermiten.
that hardly the charge was there avoided.

von beiden speren wart dâ krach:
from both spears was there crash:

ein schœn tyost aldâ geschach.
a beautiful joust there happened.

sus verstâche wir, daz ist wâr,
thus used-up we, that is true,

sehs sper wol sunder vælen gar.
six spears well without missing wholly.

1445 Sus het der hôchgemuote man
Thus had the high-spirited man

sehs sper wol ritterlîch vertân
six spears well knightly spent

sunder vælen unde alsô,
without missing and so,

daz ich sîn was ze gesellen frô.
that I of-him was as companion glad.

er het mit ritterlîcher tât
he had with knightly deed

ze tavelrunde gewunnen stat:
at Round-Table won place:

dâ von sô wuohs in allen wîs
there from so grew in all ways

sîn lop, sîn êre und ouch sîn prîs.
his praise, his honor and also his prize.

Dâ kom von Buseke her Heinrîch, 1446
There came of Buseck sir Heinrich,

gezimirt dêswâr ritterlîch.
crested truly knightly.

der was mit zühten hôchgemuot,
he was with courtesies high-spirited,

vor ritters wandel wol behuot.
from knight's blemish well guarded.

den bestuont nâch mîner bet
him attacked after my request

von Spiegelberc her Lanzilet.
of Spiegelberg sir Lancelot.

die bêde verstâchen dâ driu sper
they both used-up there three spears

wol sunder vælen und niht mêr.
well without missing and not more.

Dâ wart getjostiret dannoch mêr 1447
There was jousted still more

und wol verstochen vil manic sper.
and well used-up very many-a spear.

der tyost ich wil hie verdagen
of-the joust I will here be-silent

und wil daz mære iu fürbaz sagen:
and will the tale you further tell:

wir zogten dannen sâ zehant
we drew thence at-once forthwith

gein Niuwenkirchen, dâ ich vant
toward Neunkirchen, where I found

vil manigen ritter tyoste gern,
very many-a knight of-joust desiring,

den sus, den sô, mit starken spern.
this-one thus, that-one so, with strong spears.

1448 Von den wurde wir enpfangen dâ
By them were we received there
dêswâr vil ritterlîchen sâ.
truly very knightly at-once.
sich huop dâ ein schœne ritterspil:
itself raised there a beautiful knight-game:
dâ wart getjostiret aber vil.
there was jousted again much.
dâ wart von speres bresten krach,
there was from spear's breaking crash,
die drumzen man ûf vliegen sach,
the splinters one up fly saw,
ûf dem velde über al
on the field over all
hôrt man von speres krachen schal.
heard one of spear's cracking clamor.

1449 Daz tjostiren wert, daz ist wâr,
The jousting lasted, that is true,
vil schône unz an den âbent gar,
very beautifully until to the evening wholly,
daz niemen anders niht dâ pflac.
that no-one else anything there did.
vil drumezen ûf der erde lac.
very-many splinters on the earth lay.
man hôrt von speren krachâ krach.
one heard from spears crack-ho crack.
die biderben man unmüezic sach:
the worthy-ones one busy saw:
die bœsen müeten sich dâ niht,
the base-ones troubled themselves there not,
als noch an maniger stat geschiht.
as still in many-a place happens.

Inner des der âbent quam, 1450
Meanwhile of-that the evening came,

der liehte tac ein ende nam;
the bright day an end took;

die ritter rûmten sâ daz velt.
the knights cleared at-once the field.

dô fuor ouch ich in mîn gezelt,
then went also I into my tent,

dâ ich die naht het guot gemach.
where I the night had good ease.

sâ dô der ander tac ûf prach,
at-once when the second day up broke,

eine messe vernam ich duo:
a mass heard I then:

daz was des sunnetagen morgen fruo.
that was of-the Sunday morning early.

Dar nâch enbize wir alzehant. 1451
There after breakfasted we forthwith.

drî niuwe banir ich an bant,
three new banners I on bound,

gevar reht nâch dem schilde mîn.
colored right after the shield mine.

ich wolde dâ niht lenger sîn.
I would there not longer be.

der banir fuort man eine dan,
of-the banners carried one one thence,

dâr nâch man ziehen sâ began
there after one draw at-once began

unser soumer über al.
our sumpter-horses over all.

sich huop von sumberslagen schal.
itself raised from kettle-drum-beats clamor.

1452 Man hôrt dâ floyten holer dôn.
One heard there flutes hollow tone.

dar nâch sô fuort man aber schôn
there after so led one again handsomely

der banir eine: dâ zoch man nâch
of-the banners one: there drew one after

diu orss vil gar. uns was niht gâch.
the horses very wholly. to-us was not hasty.

vil knehte nâch den örssen riten,
many servants after the horses rode,

gekleidet wol nâch knehte siten:
dressed well after servants' customs:

si fuorten starker schefte vil,
they carried of-strong shafts many,

di gehôrten zuo dem ritterspil.
which belonged to the knight-game.

1453 Nâch den knehten fuort man dô
After the servants carried one then

di dritten banir. ich was vrô,
the third banner. I was glad,

daz dar nâch sô manic ritter reit:
that there after so many-a knight rode:

des was mîn herze vil gemeit.
of-that was my heart very joyful.

mêr danne hundert ir dâ riten,
more than hundred of-them there rode,

alle in cappen wol gesniten.
all in capes well cut.

si fuorten manigen pfâben huot:
they wore many-a peacock hat:

ir pfärde, ir sätel wâren guot.
their horses, their saddles were good.

Von ir zeumen was dâ klanc. 1454
From their bridles was there clang.

deheiner dâ den andern dranc:
none there the other pressed:

ir zwên und zwên ie riten dan.
of-them two and two ever rode thence.

dar nâch ich rîten ouch began.
there after I ride also began.

bî mir reit dô her Nycolâ
by me rode then sir Nicholas

dêswâr in hôhem muote dâ,
truly in high spirit there,

von Lebenberc der wol bekant:
of Lebenberg the well known-one:

den het ich her Tristram genant.
him had I sir Tristan named.

Vil fidelære dâ bî uns riten, 1455
Many fiddlers there by us rode,

der vinger grôz unmuozze liten:
whose fingers great busyness suffered:

ir seiten wâren gezogen hô,
their strings were drawn high,

ir süeze dœn uns tâten frô.
their sweet tunes us made glad.

vil müezeclîch ich rîten bat.
very leisurely I ride bade.

sus zogt wir gegen der Niuwenstat
thus drew we toward the Neustadt

über daz Steinvelt alzehant.
over the Steinfeld forthwith.

dâ kom ein bot gein mir gerant.
there came a messenger toward me running.

1456 Der sprach: «vil lieber herre mîn,
He spoke: «very dear lord mine,

iuch heizet got willekomen sîn
you bids God welcome be

der werde fürst ûz Œsterrîch
the worthy prince out-of Austria

und enbiutet iu daz endelîch,
and announces you that truly,

daz er sî iwerr künfte vrô.
that he be of-your coming glad.

er hât enboten iu alsô,
he has announced to-you so,

daz er durch iwer werdicheit
that he for your worthiness

iu immer dienstes sî bereit.
to-you ever of-service be ready.

1457 Er danket iu in allen wîs
He thanks you in all ways

des, daz ir ûz dem paradîs
of-that, that you out-of the paradise

gevaren sît in sîniu lant.
gone are into his lands.

dar umb hât er den muot gewant
there for has he the spirit turned

iu ze dienest sunder kranc;
to-you to service without flaw;

er ist iu holt gar âne wanc,
he is to-you devoted wholly without wavering,

er treit iu dienesthaften muot:
he bears you serviceable spirit:

sîn wille ist iu ze dienen guot.
his will is you to serve good.

Er hiez iu, herre, sagen, daz 1458
He bade you, lord, tell, that

er wolde gerne âne haz
he would gladly without hate

mit iu verstechen hie driu sper:
with you use-up here three spears:

daz ist des werden fürsten ger.
that is of-the worthy prince desire.

ez ist gar sînes herzen rât,
it is wholly of-his heart's counsel,

daz er ze tavelrunde stat
that he at Round-Table place

erwerbe und iwer gesinde sî:
win and your household be:

der wille ist mînem herren bî.»
the will is to-my lord by.»

IV · THE DUKE'S WELCOME

Arthur sends the duke word that he will grant whatever he asks, and the duke answers that both of them may grow rich. Knights ride out to greet Arthur in troops: the cupbearer of Habsbach, the Preussel brothers, Heinrich of Liechtenstein, valiant but stingy, which prompts a reproach of stinginess in knights, the lord of Meissau, the duke's household, Leidegast, coarse and without courtesy, and Otto of Haslau, whose greeting wins him many friends.

Ich sprach: «nu sage dem herren dîn: 1459
I spoke: «now tell the lord thine:

und wil er mîn gesinde sîn,
and (if)-will he my household be,

swes er mit gâbe von mir gert,
whatever he with gift from me desires,

des wirt er alles wol gewert.
of-that is he all well granted.

ich lîhe, ich gibe im, swaz er wil,
I lend, I give him, whatever he will,

es sî lützel oder vil,
it be little or much,

bürge, leute und dar zuo lant:
castles, people and there to land:

daz sol im lîhen gar mîn hant.
that shall him lend wholly my hand.

Ich wil im lîhen unde geben,
I will him lend and give,

al die wîle in got lât leben;
all the while him God lets live;

ich wil im nimmer niht versagen
I will him never anything refuse

für wâr bî allen mînen tagen.
for true by all my days.

ich hân ze geben alsô vil,
I have to give so much,

(bescheidenlîch ich sprechen wil),
(plainly I speak will),

swaz er von mîner hant enpfât,
whatever he from my hand receives,

mîn lîp niht deste minre hât.»
my person not the less has.»

Der rede wart vil gelachet dâ.
At-the speech was much laughed there.

der bot reit von danne sâ
the messenger rode from thence at-once

gein Liehtenwerde sâ zehant,
toward Lichtenwörth at-once forthwith,

dâ er den werden fürsten vant,
where he the worthy prince found,

der in vil vlîziclîch enphie.
who him very diligently received.

für daz tor er gegen im gie;
before the gate he toward him went;

er sprach: «du solt mir rehte jehen:
he spoke: «thou shalt me rightly declare:

hâstû den künic Artûs gesehen?»
hast-thou the king Arthur seen?»

«Herre, ich sach in hôchgemuot. 1462
«Lord, I saw him high-spirited.

er enbiutet iu ze lîhen guot
he announces you to lend goods

und ouch ze geben willeclîch.
and also to give willingly.

er giht, er sî sô guotes rîch,
he declares, he be so of-goods rich,

swaz ir enpfâhet sîner habe,
whatever you receive of-his possession,

daz er niht deste minner habe.
that he not the less have.

er zogt vil ritterlîchen her:
he draws very knightly hither:

man füert im mit wol tûsent sper.
one carries for-him with well thousand spears.

1463 Er ist mit zühten vil gemeit.
He is with courtesies very cheerful.

er und die sîne sint gekleit
he and the his are clad

vil kostlîchen unde alsô,
very costly and so,

daz ich sîn was ze sehen vrô.
that I of-it was to see glad.

er giht, vil lieber herre mîn,
he declares, very dear lord mine,

und welt ir sîn gesinde sîn,
and (if)-will you his household be,

er mache iuch für wâr guotes rîch:
he makes you for true of-goods rich:

des jach er gegen mir offenlîch.»
that declared he toward me openly.»

1464 Dô sprach der fürste Friderîch:
Then spoke the prince Frederick:

«wir mugen wol bêde werden rîch,
«we may well both become rich,

swie arm ich gegen dem künege bin,
however poor I toward the king am,

teilt er mit mir und ich mit im.
(if)-shares he with me and I with him.

wir mügen guotes vil bejagen,
we may of-goods much win,

welle wir uns ritterlîch betragen.
(if)-will we ourselves knightly bear.

ez füege danne grôz ungeschiht,
it bring then great mishap,

wir verderben an dem guote niht.»
we perish in the goods not.»

Sâ dô diu rede alhie geschach, 1465
At-once when the speech here happened,

die wîle man uns schœn zogen sach
the while one us beautifully draw saw

mit freuden gegen der Niuwenstat.
with joys toward the Neustadt.

di mînen ich mit zühten bat
the mine I with courtesies bade

alle wesen hôch gemuot.
all be high spirited.

ich sprach: «ez ist gar ze êren guot,
I spoke: «it is wholly to honors good,

swâ êren gerndes ritters lîp
wherever honor desiring knight's person

ist hôch gemuot durch guotiu wîp.»
is high spirited for good women.»

Sus zogt wir mit freuden dar. 1466
Thus drew we with joys thither.

uns widerreit manic ritterschar:
us rode-against many-a knight-troop:

die riten gegen uns ritterlîch.
they rode toward us knightly.

ir was vil maniger muotes rîch.
of-them was very many-a-one of-spirit rich.

mit zühten sî dâ gegen uns riten,
with courtesies they there toward us rode,

si gruozten uns nâch friundes siten.
they greeted us after friend's customs.

vil maniger uns dâ gern sach,
very many-a-one us there gladly saw,

als uns ir güetlîch gruoz verjach.
as to-us their kindly greeting declared.

1467 Von Habechspach schenk Heinrîch
Of Habsbach cupbearer Heinrich

dâ gegen mir reit vil ritterlîch.
there toward me rode very knightly.

mit vierzec rittern oder mêr
with forty knights or more

reit dâ gein mir der muotes hêr.
rode there toward me the of-spirit proud.

mit im reit dâ der bruoder sîn:
with him rode there the brother his:

der kunde tiurre niht gesîn:
he could more-precious not be:

her Uolrîch sô was er genant,
sir Ulrich so was he named,

von sînen tugenden wît bekant.
for his virtues widely known.

1468 Dô mich der schenk alrêrst ersach,
When me the cupbearer first saw,

ûz hôhem muote der biderbe sprach:
out-of high spirit the worthy-one spoke:

«got willekomen, künec Artûs!
«God welcome, king Arthur!

ich sihe wol, daz diu minne hûs
I see well, that the love house

für wâr in iwerm hertzen hât,
for true in your heart has,

wan sî iuch selten ruowen lât.
for she you seldom rest lets.

si rætet iu unmuoze vil:
she counsels you busyness much:

des müezt ir sîn tyoste zil.
of-that must you be of-joust target.

Dô ich nu jungest von iu schiet, 1469
When I now lately from you parted,

dô sunget ir guot niuwiu liet.
then sang you good new songs.

der selben liet sprach einez sô,
of-the same songs spoke one so,

daz iwer herze sprünge hô
that your heart leaped high

und wie ez stiez an iwer prust:
and how it knocked at your breast:

daz was der ritterschaft gelust;
that was the chivalry's desire;

daz ich nu wol verstanden hân.»
that I now well understood have.»

der rede man lachen dô began.
at-the speech one laugh then began.

Gein mir dô zwêne ritter guot 1470
Toward me then two knights good

riten, die man hôchgemuot
rode, whom one high-spirited

dâ unde sît vil ofte sach.
then and since very often saw.

von rehte man ir lop wîten sprach;
by right one their praise widely spoke;

si wâren hôher êren rîch:
they were of-high honors rich:

her Wernhart und her Heinrîch
sir Wernhard and sir Heinrich

(die Breuzel wâren sî genant):
(the Preussel were they named):

ir muot ûf êre was gewant.
their spirit on honor was turned.

1471 Ir lop verdienet was vil breit.
Their praise earned was very broad.

durch ir vil hôhe manheit
for their very high manhood

het sî gemachet guotes rîch
had them made of-goods rich

der werde fürste Friderîch
the worthy prince Frederick

von Œsterrîche, der herre mîn.
of Austria, the lord mine.

des müez sîn sêle sælic sîn,
of-that may his soul blessed be,

daz er die biderben wol beriet
that he the worthy-ones well provided

und sî gar von ir kumber schiet!
and them wholly from their trouble parted!

1472 Der antvanc dâ mit triwen wart.
The reception there with faithfulness was.

her Heinrîch und her Wernhart
sir Heinrich and sir Wernhard

di gruozten uns dâ ritterlîch:
they greeted us there knightly:

ir grüezen daz was zühte rîch.
their greeting that was of-courtesy rich.

si sprâchen beide: «got weiz daz wol,
they spoke both: «God knows that well,

künic Artûs, wir sîn freuden vol
king Arthur, we are of-joys full

dâ von, daz iuch in ditz lant
there from, that you into this land

got uns ze freuden hât gesant.
God to-us for joys has sent.

Des ist gar trûren uns benomen.» 1473
Of-that is wholly sadness from-us taken.»

mit in was dar gein uns bekomen
with them was thither toward us come

wol zweinzic ritter oder baz.
well twenty knights or better.

ir sült für wâr gelouben daz,
you shall for true believe that,

daz uns ieslîcher gern sach,
that us each gladly saw,

als uns ir güetlîch gruoz verjach,
as to-us their kindly greeting declared,

si gruozten uns sus unde sô,
they greeted us thus and so,

si wâren unser künfte vrô.
they were of-our coming glad.

Dô der gruoz dâ ein ende nam, 1474
When the greeting there an end took,

vil schône dâ gein uns bequam
very beautifully there toward us came

von Liehtenstein her Heinrîch:
of Liechtenstein sir Heinrich:

der hiez von reht der manlîch.
he was-called by right the manly-one.

er was des lîbes gar ein degen,
he was of-the body wholly a hero,

er het aber milte sich bewegen:
he had however bounty himself renounced:

von milte wolt er niht lobes hân,
for bounty would he no praise have,

er was für wâr ein arger man.
he was for true a stingy man.

1475 Selbe zwelft er schône gegen uns reit.
Himself twelfth he beautifully toward us rode.

di einlef dar durch sîn manheit
the eleven thither for his manhood

wâren schône dar bekomen.
were beautifully thither come.

het er sich milt iht an genomen,
had he himself bountiful anything at taken,

sô wær sîn hôhiu werdicheit
so were his high worthiness

in allen landen warden breit:
in all lands become broad:

daz sûmt er mit der ärge sîn.
that neglected he with the stinginess his.

daz muoz mîn munt noch klagende sîn.
that must my mouth still lamenting be.

1476 Ez ist ein wunderlîcher muot,
It is a wondrous spirit,

swelch ritter mit dem lîbe tuot
whichever knight with the body does

daz beste, daz er immer kan,
the best, that he ever can,

daz der wil sîn ein arger man.
that he will be a stingy man.

der müet für wâr umbe sus den lîp:
he troubles for true for nothing the body:

jâ spottet sîn man unde wîp,
yes mocks him man and woman,

swaz kuonheit im der lîp getuot,
whatever boldness him the body does,

swanne er vor êren spart daz guot.
whenever he from honors saves the goods.

Swelch ritter sölher sinne pfliget, 1477
Whichever knight of-such senses takes-care,

daz er des lîbes sich bewiget
that he of-the body himself gives-up

durch êre und dâ bî haldet guot
for honor and there by keeps goods

vor êren, der ist niht wol gemuot.
from honors, he is not well spirited.

dem ist daz guot liep für den lîp,
to-him is the goods dear before the body,

dem sint von reht vînt guotiu wîp,
to-him are by right enemies good women,

der ist des guotes, und ez niht sîn:
he is the goods, and it not his:

des muoz er sunder êre sîn.
of-that must he without honor be.

Der rede hân ich genuoc geseit. 1478
Of-the speech have I enough said.

nu hœret, wie dô gegen uns reit
now hear, how then toward us rode

von Missouwe der vil biderbe man:
of Meissau the very worthy man:

der hete daz vil ungern lân,
he had that very unwillingly left,

er wære dâ schône gein uns bekomen.
he were there beautifully toward us come.

der biderbe het sich an genomen,
the worthy-one had himself on taken,

daz er nâch werden êren ranc.
that he after worthy honors strove.

des habe sîn manlîch hertze danc!
of-that have his manly heart thanks!

1479 Ez fuort gein uns der hôchgemuot
There led toward us the high-spirited-one

dâ vier und zweinzic ritter guot:
there four and twenty knights good:

mit zühten sî dâ gegen uns riten.
with courtesies they there toward us rode.

ir kleider wâren wol gesniten
their clothes were well cut

und ouch von hôher koste rîch.
and also of high cost rich.

si gruozten uns vil ritterlîch:
they greeted us very knightly:

ir gruoz und unser habedanc
their greeting and our thanks

mit triuwen was gar âne wanc.
with faithfulness was wholly without wavering.

1480 Nâch dem gruoz reit gein uns her
After the greeting rode toward us hither

ein schar vil gar gelîche hêr,
a troop very wholly alike proud,

gelîche edel, gelîche rîch:
alike noble, alike rich:

der werde fürste ûz Œsterrîch
the worthy prince out-of Austria

het sich di biderben an genomen
had himself the worthy-ones on taken

ze gesinde, die man dâ sach komen.
as household, whom one there saw come.

in was der rîche fürste holt:
to-them was the mighty prince devoted:

daz heten sî mit dienst geholt.
that had they with service won.

Daz eine was mîn her Trôstelîn: 1481
The one was my sir Tröstlein:

der kunde tiuwere niht gesîn.
he could more-precious not be.

daz ander was der tugentrîch
the second was the virtue-rich

von Hutensdorf mîn her Uolrîch.
of Hutensdorf my sir Ulrich.

der dritte mîn her Ebrân,
the third my sir Ebran,

der übermüete, zornic man.
the overbearing, wrathful man.

daz vierde was der von Swarzensê:
the fourth was he of Schwarzensee:

dem was nâch guote, nâch êren wê.
to-whom was after goods, after honors woe.

Von Sahssendorf der höfsch Uolrîch 1482
Of Sachsendorf the courtly Ulrich

uns alle dâ gruozte ritterlîch.
us all there greeted knightly.

als tet ouch, daz geloubet mir,
as did also, that believe me,

von Lahssendorf der werde Stier.
of Lachsendorf the worthy Stier.

dar nâch gruozt uns dâ minneclîch
there after greeted us there lovingly

von Toblîch der vil küene Prunrîch,
of Toblach the very bold Prunrich,

der selten ie erschrecket wart.
who seldom ever frightened was.

uns gruozt von Spitze her Wîchart.
us greeted of Spitz sir Wichart.

1483 Her Ekkehart Posche uns gruozte dô
Sir Ekkehard Posch us greeted then

mit zühten wol: sîn muot stuont hô.
with courtesies well: his spirit stood high.

von Dobrach der schenke Dietrîch,
of Dobra the cupbearer Dietrich,

von Witeginsdorf her Friderîch,
of Wittingsdorf sir Frederick,

di gruozten uns nâch zühte sit.
they greeted us after courtesy's custom.

her Liupolt und ouch her Sîfrit
sir Leopold and also sir Siegfried

(von Medelic wâren sî genant)
(of Mödling were they named)

di gruozten schône sâ zehant.
they greeted beautifully at-once forthwith.

1484 Her Drusliep und ouch her Liupolt
Sir Drusliep and also sir Leopold

von Heimenburc, den was vil holt
of Hainburg, to-them was very devoted

der werde fürst ûz Œsterrîch:
the worthy prince out-of Austria:

die gruozten uns dâ minneclîch.
they greeted us there lovingly.

von Valkenstein her Zlâwat,
of Falkenstein sir Zlawat,

der pfaffe von der Vrîenstat,
the priest of the Freistadt,

ein höfsch ritter hiez der Spân:
a courtly knight was-called the Spaniard:

des gruoz uns danken an gewan.
whose greeting us thanks from won.

Her Sîfrit Rebestoc uns sâ 1485
Sir Siegfried Rebestock us at-once

mit zühten gruozte schône dâ.
with courtesies greeted beautifully there.

von Schœnenkirchen her Dietmâr
of Schönkirchen sir Dietmar

kom ouch durch grüezen gein uns dar,
came also for greeting toward us thither,

und ouch von Tobel her Liutolt
and also of Tobel sir Leutold

von uns mit grüezen danken holt.
from us with greeting thanks won.

von Potschâ mîn her Potschman
of Potschach my sir Potschman

uns danken an mit gruoz gewan.
us thanks from with greeting won.

Dar nâch grüezen uns began 1486
There after greet us began

ein ungefüege, manlîcher man,
a coarse, manly man,

von Sahssen mîn her Leidegast.
of Saxony my sir Leidegast.

…
(lacuna)

…
(lacuna)

…
(lacuna)

er hiez von rehte Leidegast,
he was-called by right Leidegast,

dô im der züht sô gar gebrast.
since him the courtesy so wholly lacked.

1487 Swelch ritter manlîch hertze hât
Whichever knight manly heart has
und zuht gar under wegen lât,
and courtesy wholly under ways leaves,
swaz der slüege lewen unde bern,
whatever he slew lions and bears,
ich wolt in doch niht êren wern.
I would him yet not honors grant.
und slüege er eine tûsent man,
and slew he alone thousand men,
er müeste doch sunder êren stân.
he must yet without honors stand.
het er âne zuht manlîchen muot,
had he without courtesy manly spirit,
sîn lop würde für wâr nimmer guot.
his praise would-become for true never good.

1488 Die ritter, die ich hie hân genant,
The knights, whom I here have named,
die het der fürst ûz Ôsterlant,
them had the prince out-of Austria,
der hôchgemuote Friderîch,
the high-spirited Frederick,
ich meine den von Œsterrîch,
I mean him of Austria,
ze gesinde alle an sich genomen.
as household all to himself taken.
des sach man sî dar schône komen,
of-that saw one them thither beautifully come,
gekleidet und georsset wol,
clad and horsed well,
als fürsten gesinde von rehte sol.
as prince's household by right shall.

Nu wîchet! lât in gein uns komen, 1489
Now yield! let him toward us come,

von dem nie bôsheit wart vernomen
from whom never baseness was heard

und der von reht het hôhen prîs,
and who by right had high prize,

wan er drumbe warp in allen wîs,
for he for-it strove in all ways,

von Haslowe den biderben man,
of Haslau the worthy man,

hern Otten, des lîp nie gewan
sir Otto, whose person never won

deheinen sus getânen site,
any so made manner,

dâ er sîn lop verswande mite.
whereby he his praise made-vanish with.

Selbe ahte er gein uns kom geriten 1490
Himself eighth he toward us came ridden

und gruozt uns mit sô höfschen siten,
and greeted us with so courtly manners,

daz der vil êregernde man
that the very honor-desiring man

friunde vil dâ von gewan.
friends many there from won.

sô süeziu wort er gegen uns sprach,
so sweet words he toward us spoke,

daz man wol hôrte, daz er sach
that one well heard, that he saw

uns gern. daz ist für wâr alsô:
us gladly. that is for true so:

sîn muot der stuont mit zühten hô.
his spirit it stood with courtesies high.

Rapoto of Falkenberg, a robber of the poor, greets the company without a smile, and Kol of Fronhofen and the worthy Weise Kadold follow. A maiden sent by Lady Honor announces a tournament at Krumau in fourteen days, its prize Lady Honor herself, and the knights all promise to go. At Kettlasbrunn Ulrich pitches the Round Table's tent behind four banners, inside a ring of silk cord and two hundred pennoned spears, and Gawain, Iwein, and Lancelot are sent to hold the ring against all comers. Then Otto of Meissau rides up with thirty spears.

1491 Dô kom gein uns mîn her Râpot
Then came toward us my sir Rapoto

von Valkenberc, der offte got
of Falkenberg, who often God

an den armen übersach.
in the poor overlooked.

von im man selten güete sprach.
of him one seldom goodness spoke.

er was ein übel, zornic man,
he was an ill, wrathful man,

er het mit rouben vil getân:
he had with robbing much done:

daz was in Œsterrîch wol schîn.
that was in Austria well seen.

er was unholt dem herren sîn.
he was hostile to-the lord his.

1492 Swaz daz lant herren ie gewan,
Whatever the land lords ever won,

den wart er selten undertân:
to-them became he seldom subject:

er truog in niht getriuwen muot.
he bore them not faithful spirit.

des was sîn leben selten guot:
of-that was his life seldom good:

er muost ofte lîden ungemach:
he must often suffer discomfort:

sîn bürge man dikke nider brach.
his castles one often down broke.

dar umbe tet er den armen wê;
there for did he to-the poor woe;

sîn akker offte truogen klê.
his fields often bore clover.

Dô uns dâ gruozte der übel man, 1493
When us there greeted the ill man,

vil maniger lachen des began,
very many-a-one laugh at-that began,

daz dâ ersmielte nie sîn munt:
that there smiled never his mouth:

dâ mit tet uns sîn hertze kunt,
there with made us his heart known,

daz er hete unbescheiden site.
that he had unmannerly custom.

doch riten dâ dem übeln mite
yet rode there the ill-one with

niwn ritter ritterlîch gemuot:
nine knights knightly spirited:

die dienten im dâ umb sîn guot.
who served him there for his goods.

1494 Swelch edel man ist sô gemuot,
Whichever noble man is so spirited,

daz er den armen leide tuot,
that he to-the poor sorrow does,

der ist unsæliclîch geborn:
he is unblessedly born:

sîn êre, sîn sêle ist verlorn.
his honor, his soul is lost.

der edele sol erbarmen sich
the noble-one shall pity himself

über di armen, daz râte ich:
over the poor, that counsel I:

so erbarmet sich got über in.
so pities himself God over him.

swer alsô tuot, dêst rehter sin.
whoever so does, that-is right sense.

1495 Dar nâch mit zühten gruozt uns wol
There after with courtesies greeted us well

von Vrônhoven mîn her Kol:
of Fronhofen my sir Kol:

der was ein hôchgemuoter man.
he was a high-spirited man.

sînem herren het er verdienet an,
from-his lord had he earned from,

dem werden fürsten Friderîch,
the worthy prince Frederick,

daz er in het gemachet rîch.
that he him had made rich.

des fuort gein uns der hôchgemuot
of-that led toward us the high-spirited-one

dâ sehs und zweinzic ritter guot.
there six and twenty knights good.

Nu swîget unde hœret mich 1496
Now be-silent and hear me

und wizet wol für wâr, daz ich
and know well for true, that I

iu nennen wil hie einen man,
you name will here a man,

des lîp untugende nie gewan:
whose person vices never won:

er was mit zühten hôchgemuot,
he was with courtesies high-spirited,

vor allen schanden gar behuot;
from all disgraces wholly guarded;

er was küene, milt genuoc,
he was bold, bountiful enough,

mit zühten er hôchgemüete truoc.
with courtesies he high-spirit bore.

Jâ muoz er ûf die triuwe mîn 1497
Yes must he on the faithfulness mine

der besten immer einer sîn,
of-the best ever one be,

den ich hân hie und dort gesehen;
whom I have here and there seen;

des muoz ich von der wârheit jehen:
of-that must I by the truth declare:

im het got sælden vil gegeben;
to-him had God blisses much given;

er kund wol ritterlîchen leben,
he could well knightly live,

er was in ritters zühten balt:
he was in knight's courtesies bold:

des wart er wol mit êren alt.
of-that became he well with honors old.

1498 Er het vil maniger hande tugent:
He had very of-many kind virtue:

des wart er wert in sîner jugent
of-that became he worthy in his youth

und wart mit hôhen êren alt.
and became with high honors old.

er moht wol heizen Swendenwalt:
he might well be-called Swendenwalt:

ez wart von sîner zeswen hant
it was by his right hand

des waldes harte vil verswant.
of-the wood very much made-vanish.

er was guot ritter sus unde sô:
he was good knight thus and so:

des stuont sîn lop von schulden hô.
of-that stood his praise by rights high.

1499 Er was den vinden gar ein hagel,
He was to-the enemies wholly a hail,

der êrst zuo in, von in der zagel:
the first to them, from them the tail:

er was ein were den friunden sîn.
he was a defense to-the friends his.

er het ouch ûf di triuwe mîn
he had also on the faithfulness mine

diu reinen, werden, süezen wîp
the pure, worthy, sweet women

rehte liep als sîn selbes lîp:
rightly dear as his own person:

er was in holt, er sprach in wol,
he was to-them devoted, he spoke of-them well,

alsô von rehte ein ritter sol.
as by right a knight shall.

Im wâren di biderben alle holt. 1500
To-him were the worthy-ones all devoted.

er hiez der biderbe Weise Kadolt.
he was-called the worthy Weise Kadold.

selbe sehzehende er dâ gein uns reit:
himself sixteenth he there toward us rode:

die wâren alle wol gekleit.
who were all well clad.

iu sî für wâr von mir gesaget:
to-you be for true by me said:

ez reit mit im ein schœniu maget:
there rode with him a beautiful maiden:

die het frow Êre dar gesant
whom had lady Honor thither sent

ze boten in daz Stîrelant.
as messenger into the Styrian-land.

Diu maget ein hôhe botschaft warb, 1501
The maiden a high message conveyed,

dar an ir werben niht verdarb.
there in her conveying not perished.

wir wurden alle ir botschefte vrô.
we became all of-her message glad.

uns saget diu schœne maget alsô,
us told the beautiful maiden thus,

si het frow Êre dar gesant:
she had lady Honor thither sent:

ein ritterschaft in Bêheim lant
a chivalry in Bohemians' land

wær ze Krumbenowe genomen:
were at Krumau taken:

dâ bat si uns hin alle komen.
there bade she us thither all come.

1502 «Swer durch mîn vrowen dar kumt,
«Whoever for my lady thither comes,

an êren ez im immer frumt.
in honors it him ever profits.

dâ wil durch mîne vrowen hân
there will for my lady hold

ein ritterschaft ir dienestman,
a chivalry her vassal,

der ofte umb êre kumber dolt.
who often for honor trouble suffers.

daz ist alhie der Weise Kadolt:
that is here the Weise Kadold:

der wil aldâ der vrowen sîn
he will there the lady his

dienen und der vrowen mîn.»
serve and the lady mine.»

1503 Diu maget sprach: «merket, waz ich sage!
The maiden spoke: «mark, what I tell!

von hiute an dem vierzehenden tage
from today on the fourteenth day

sol dâ sîn ein guot turney.
shall there be a good tournament.

dâ muoz vil manic sper enzwei
there must very many-a spear in-two

gestochen werden, daz ist alsô:
thrust be, that is so:

dâ müezen drumzen vliegen hô
there must splinters fly high

von der edelen ritter hant.
from the noble knights' hand.

dar umbe bin ich zuo iu gesant.
there for am I to you sent.

Sich hât her Cadolt des bewegen: 1504
Himself has sir Kadold of-that resolved:

er wil sich in ein foreys legen.
he will himself in a forest-camp lay.

durch mîne frowen daz geschiht:
for my lady that happens:

des hân ich iu gelogen niht.
of-that have I to-you lied not.

iu sî für wâr von mir gesaget:
to-you be for true by me said:

swelch ritter dâ den prîs bejaget,
whichever knight there the prize wins,

dem wil mîn vrowe ze lône geben
to-him will my lady as reward give

sich selben: der mac gerne leben.
herself self: he may gladly live.

Mîn vrowe den biderben ist bekant: 1505
My lady to-the worthy-ones is known:

diu werde Êre si ist genant.
the worthy Honor she is named.

swer mîn vrowen erwerben wil,
whoever my lady win will,

jâ muoz er haben tugende vil.
yes must he have virtues many.

er muoz sîn milt und hôchgemuot,
he must be bountiful and high-spirited,

vor allen schanden gar behuot;
from all disgraces wholly guarded;

er muoz durch diu vil werden wîp
he must for the very worthy women

offte wâgen guot und ouch den lîp.
often venture goods and also the body.

1506 Iu sî für wâr von mir gesaget:
To-you be for true by me said:

mîn vrowe ist ein vil reiniu maget
my lady is a very pure maiden

und hât doch gelônet mannen vil.
and has yet rewarded men many.

swer gern ir hulde haben wil,
whoever gladly her favor have will,

der sol gein ir sîn wenken lân.
he shall toward her his wavering leave.

si wil niwan die stæten hân.
she will only the steadfast-ones have.

swer ir minne ze rehte gert,
whoever her love by right desires,

der wirt vil schire von ir gewert.
he is very soon by her granted.

1507 Mîn vrowe ist reiniclîch gemuot:
My lady is purely spirited:

swelch ritter gern ir willen tuot,
whichever knight gladly her will does,

den tuot si hôher sælden rîch.
him makes she of-high blisses rich.

si ist sô rehte minneclîch,
she is so rightly lovely,

daz man ir gerne dienen sol;
that one her gladly serve shall;

si kan und mac gelônen wol.
she can and may reward well.

swelch ritter ir lœne rehte holt,
whichever knight her reward rightly wins,

dem gibt si hôher minne solt.
to-him gives she high love's pay.

Der Weise mir der rede gestât, 1508
The Weise me of-the speech grants,

her Kadolt, dem si offte hât
sir Kadold, to-whom she often has

vil werdeclîchen gruoz gegeben:
very worthy greeting given:

er kan ze dienst ir schône leben.
he can to service hers beautifully live.

von hertzen er ir wol behaget:
from heart he her well pleases:

er hât vil offte prîs bejaget
he has very often prize won

in ir dienste ritterlîch:
in her service knightly:

des ist er von ir lobes rîch.»
of-that is he from her of-praise rich.»

Der Weise Kadolt der sprach alsô: 1509
The Weise Kadold he spoke thus:

«vrowe, ir lobt mich alze hô
«lady, you praise me all-too high

(ir lobt mich wæn in spotes wîs),
(you praise me think-I in mockery's manner),

und het ich alsô hôhen prîs,
and had I so high prize,

als ir von mir hie habt gesaget.
as you of me here have said.

lât iwern spot, vil schœniu maget!
leave your mockery, very beautiful maiden!

iwer übric lop mich machet rôt:
your excessive praise me makes red:

des gât mir wol von schulden nôt.»
of-that goes to-me well by rights need.»

1510 Der rede manic ritter lachte dâ.
At-the speech many-a knight laughed there.

dô sprach diu maget aber sâ:
then spoke the maiden again at-once:

«ich het vil gerne daz vernomen,
«I had very gladly that heard,

wer hintze der ritterschaft wolde komen
who to the chivalry would come

ze Krumbenowe. und west ich daz,
at Krumau. and knew I that,

mir wære verre deste baz.
to-me were far the better.

mir enhâts dehein ritter noch verjehen:
to-me has-it any knight yet declared:

dar an ist leide mir geschehen.»
there in is sorrow to-me happened.»

1511 Der schenk von Habechspach sprach zehant:
The cupbearer of Habsbach spoke forthwith:

«juncfrowe, ich tuon iu daz bekant:
«young-lady, I make you that known:

ich var dâ hin, gan mir sîn got.
I go there thither, grant me of-it God.

sît daz ir sît der Êren bot,
since that you are the Honor's messenger,

wie möht ich iu versagen daz,
how might I you refuse that,

ich füere dâ hin? mir solden haz
I went there thither? to-me should hate

von rehte di biderben alle tragen,
by right the worthy-ones all bear,

solde ich iu ein sölhe vart versagen.»
should I you a such journey refuse.»

Dar nâch wart dâ ein michel schal. 1512
There after was there a great clamor.

die ritter sprâchen alle über al:
the knights spoke all over all:

«juncvrowe, wir wellen alle dar.»
«young-lady, we will all thither.»

des danct diu maget wol gevar.
for-that thanked the maiden well colored.

si sprach: «sô sol diu vrowe mîn
she spoke: «so shall the lady mine

iu allen hôhe dankent sîn:
to-you all highly thanking be:

si sol ze lôn iu machen breit
she shall as reward you make broad

iwer hôhe werdicheit.»
your high worthiness.»

Sâ dô diu rede alhie geschach, 1513
At-once when the speech here happened,

vil schône man uns dô rîten sach
very beautifully one us then ride saw

mit freuden durch die Niuwenstat
with joys through the Neustadt

gein Kezenlînsdorf, reht als ich bat.
toward Kettlasbrunn, right as I bade.

dâ wârn geslagen mir ûf daz velt
there were pitched for-me on the field

ahte hütte und dar zuo vier gezelt,
eight huts and there to four tents,

ûf einen anger wunneclîch.
on a meadow delightful.

dâ hin riten wir vil muotes rîch.
there thither rode we very of-spirit rich.

1514 Ez was der tavelrunde gezelt
It was the Round-Table's tent
geslagen her für ûf daz velt.
pitched hither forth onto the field.
dâ für vil schône nach mîner gir
there before very beautifully after my desire
gestôzen wâren vier banir,
planted were four banners,
sô daz dehein di andern dranc.
so that none the others pressed.
si wâren wol rosselouffes lanc
they were well horse-course long
und wol als wît gestôzen dâ.
and well as wide planted there.
di wurden vil geschowet sâ.
they were much beheld at-once.

1515 Di banir wâren gestôzen sô,
The banners were planted so,
daz ich sîn was ze sehen vrô.
that I of-it was to see glad.
der umbe gezogen was aldâ
there about drawn was there
ein snuor vil schône gel unde blâ,
a cord very beautifully yellow and blue,
geflohten dêswâr meisterlîch.
braided truly masterfully.
von sîden was si kosterîch,
of silk was it costly,
den wîten rinc si gar umbvie.
the wide ring it wholly surrounded.
dar nâch gestôzen dort unde hie
there after planted there and here

Wâren schône nâch mîner ger 1516
Were beautifully after my desire

gestôzen reht zwei hundert sper,
planted right two hundred spears,

an ieslîch sper ein vänelîn
on each spear a little-pennon

gevar reht nâch dem schilde mîn.
colored right after the shield mine.

in den rinc man niemen lie
into the ring one no-one let

für wâr weder dort noch hie:
for true neither there nor here:

si muosten alle wesen hie vor;
they must all be here before;

wan dâ gemachet wâren tor.
except where made were gates.

Zwei tor dâ giengen in den rinc. 1517
Two gates there went into the ring.

daz was iedoch ein höfschlîch dinc,
that was yet a courtly thing,

daz in den rinc dâ niemen reit,
that into the ring there no-one rode,

wan der ze tyost was wol bereit:
but he-who for joust was well ready:

dar in sô reit ôt niemen mê.
there into so rode just no-one more.

daz het ich allez bedâht wol ê,
that had I all thought well before,

daz die tyostiwer dâ niemen dranc:
that the jousters there no-one pressed:

des sagt sît vil maniger danc.
of-that said since very many-a-one thanks.

1518 Da erbeizt wir nider ûf daz velt
There dismounted we down onto the field
für der tavelrunde gezelt,
before the Round-Table's tent,
dar in man vil durch schowen gie;
there into one much for viewing went;
doch anders niemen niwan die,
yet otherwise no-one only those,
die ritters namen heten sô,
who knight's name had so,
daz offte ir drumzen vlugen hô.
that often their splinters flew high.
dar in sô liez man niemen mê:
there into so let one no-one more:
daz tet den swach gemuoten wê.
that did to-the base spirited woe.

1519 Die ritter urloubes gerten dâ.
The knights of-leave desired there.
ûz hôhem muote sprach ich sâ:
out-of high spirit spoke I at-once:
«nu vart von mir in gotes segen!
«now go from me in God's blessing!
swer ritterschaft welle hiute pflegen,
whoever chivalry will today take-care-of,
der kom uns schiere: daz ist mîn rât;
he come to-us soon: that is my counsel;
wan uns der âbent nâhen gât.
for to-us the evening near goes.

wir süln ouch hiute durch guotiu wîp
we shall also today for good women
mit tyostiren müen den lîp:
with jousting trouble the body:
daz ist mîn rât und ouch mîn bet.»
that is my counsel and also my request.»
von mir si riten an der stet.
from me they rode on the spot.

Ich sprach: «von Liehtenstein Gâwân,
I spoke: «of Liechtenstein Gawain,
von Landesêre her Ybân,
of Landesere sir Iwein,
von Spiegelperc her Lantzelet,
of Spiegelberg sir Lancelot,
ez ist mîn wille und ouch mîn bet,
it is my will and also my request,
daz ir iuch wâpent snelleclîch
that you yourselves arm quickly
und den rinc hiute wert ritterlîch
and the ring today defend knightly
gein allen den, die zuo iu komen!
against all those, who to you come!
daz mac an êren iuch gefromen.»
that may in honors you profit.»

1520

1521 Die drî des urloubes wurden vrô:
The three of-the leave became glad:

wan ir muot stuont ûf êre hô.
for their spirit stood on honor high.

si wurden kürzlîch wol bereit
they became shortly well ready

in ritterlîchiu wâpenkleit.
in knightly coats-of-arms.

dô kom her Otte von Mîssouwe her:
then came sir Otto of Meissau hither:

dem fuort man mit wol drîzic sper.
for-whom led one with well thirty spears.

er was vil ritterlîch gemuot:
he was very knightly spirited:

mit im reit dâ manic ritter guot.
with him rode there many-a knight good.

VI · THE RING AT KETTLASBRUNN

Otto of Meissau and Gawain break spears on each other, and Gawain, Iwein, and Lancelot hold the ring until night. In the morning Weise Kadold jousts first with Arthur and puts his own thumb out of joint. Ulrich jousts on until his companions take his shield and helmet from him and claim the ring for themselves, and six knights, Tristan, Parzival, Ither, Lancelot, Erec, and Segramors, hold it all day; Ulrich praises the feats of each.

1522 Von Mîssowe der biderbe man
Of Meissau the worthy man

fuort alsölich zimirde an,
wore such crest on,

daz sîn dem keiser wær genuoc.
that of-it to-the emperor were enough.

ûf sînem helme der biderbe truoc
on his helmet the worthy-one bore

einen krantz von gansvedern grôz und wîz
a wreath of goose-feathers great and white

sîn helme geworht was wol mit flîz:
his helmet wrought was well with diligence:

sîn schilt was gar von golde rôt,
his shield was wholly of gold red,

als im sîn hôher muot gebôt.
as him his high spirit commanded.

Dar ûf ein einhürne zobelvar. 1523
There on a unicorn sable-colored.

sîn wâpenroc, sîn decke gar,
his surcoat, his covering wholly,

wâren vil guot paltekîn.
were very good brocade.

dar ûf sach man gestreut ouch sîn
there on saw one strewn also his

einhürne vil nâch zobel var.
unicorns very near sable colored.

sîn banir was gevar vür wâr
his banner was colored for true

rehte dem schilde gelîch getân.
right to-the shield alike made.

sus kom dort her der biderbe man.
thus came there hither the worthy man.

1524 Dô kom gein im dâ her Gâwân
Then came toward him there sir Gawain

von Liehtenstein. der fuort ouch an
of Liechtenstein. he wore also on

gezimir, daz gab liehten schîn.
crest, that gave bright shine.

der fuort ûf dem helme sîn
he carried on the helmet his

ein wæl von golde geortert wol.
a crown of gold pointed well.

ieslîch ort pfânsvedern vol
each point of-peacock-feathers full

bewunden was in koste wîs.
wound was in costly manner.

der werde het vil hôhen prîs.
the worthy-one had very high prize.

1525 Der biderbe was der pruoder mîn:
The worthy-one was the brother mine:

des fuort er für wâr den schilt sîn
of-that bore he for true the shield his

dem mînen reht gelîch gevar.
to-the mine right alike colored.

der schilt was wîz, zwô swarze bâr
the shield was white, two black bars

schipfes nâch dem swert zetal;
slanting after the sword downward;

dar ûf ein puckel von golde wal
there on a boss of gold choice

was gemachet meisterlîch:
was made masterfully:

sus fuort den schilt der muotes rîch.
thus bore the shield the of-spirit rich.

Sîn wâpenroc, sîn decke was 1526
His surcoat, his covering was

von samît grüen alsam ein gras,
of samite green like a grass,

dar ûf der schilde vil gestreut.
there on of-the shields many strewn.

der hôchgemuot sich vaste freut
the high-spirited-one himself fast rejoices

eins starken speres, daz er fuort.
of-a strong spear, which he carried.

daz orsse mit sporn er vaste ruort:
the horse with spurs he fast stirred:

sîn puneiz wart envollen lanc:
his charge was in-full long:

nâch vrowen lône der biderbe ranc.
after ladies' reward the worthy-one strove.

Dô kom ouch ritterlîchen her 1527
Then came also knightly hither

her Otte von Mîssowe. beidiu sper
sir Otto of Meissau. both spears

wurden dâ enzwei geriten
were there in-two ridden

mit kunst nâch ritterlîchen siten.
with skill after knightly customs.

an beiden helsen daz geschach.
on both necks that happened.

die drumzen man ûf vliegen sach.
the splinters one up fly saw.

diu tyost muost dâ dunken guot
the joust must there seem good

vil manigen ritter hôch gemuot.
very to-many-a knight high spirited.

1528 Dar nâch kom in den rinc gerant
There after came into the ring running

gezimirt schône sâ zehant
crested beautifully at-once forthwith

ahtzehen ritter ritterlîch.
eighteen knights knightly.

«wîchâ, herre, wîchâ wîch!
«give-way, lord, give-way give-way!

wîchet, lât tyostirens pflegen!»
yield, let of-jousting take-care!»

dâ het ouch sich der tyost bewegen
there had also himself to-the joust resolved

in hôhem muote an der stet
in high spirit on the spot

von Spiegelberc her Lanzilet.
of Spiegelberg sir Lancelot.

1529 Von Landesêre her Ywân,
Of Landesere sir Iwein,

her Lanzilet und her Gâwân
sir Lancelot and sir Gawain

die tâten ez des âbendes sô,
they did it of-the evening so,

dâ von ir lop muost stîgen hô.
there from their praise must climb high.

si werten den rinc, daz ist wâr,
they defended the ring, that is true,

den âbent al den rittern gar.
the evening all against-the knights wholly.

dâ wart manic schœne tyost geriten,
there was many-a beautiful joust ridden,

sus unde sô, nâch ritters siten.
thus and so, after knight's customs.

Daz triben sî, biz daz diu naht 1530
That drove they, until that the night

den tac vertreip dâ mit ir maht:
the day drove-away there with her might:

dô muost wir rûmen dâ daz velt.
then must we clear there the field.

wir fuoren sâ in diu gezelt:
we went at-once into the tents:

di andern fuoren in die stat.
the others went into the town.

ûz hôhem muote ich sî dô bat,
out-of high spirit I them then bade,

daz sî des morgens kœmen fruo:
that they of-the morning came early:

daz lobten sî mit willen duo.
that vowed they with will then.

Her Kadolt Weise der sprach dô 1531
Sir Kadold Weise he spoke then

vil gar verholne zuo mir sô:
very wholly secretly to me so:

«künic Artûs, ir sult mich wern,
«king Arthur, you shall me grant,

des ich durch dienst wil an iuch gern,
what I for service will of you desire,

daz ir mit mir iwer êrstez sper
that you with me your first spear

morgen hie verstechet: daz ist mîn ger.
tomorrow here use-up: that is my desire.

ir sült mich des geniezen lân,
you shall me of-that profit let,

daz iu mîn dienst ist undertân.»
that to-you my service is subject.»

1532 Ich sprach: «her Weise, ir sît sô wert,
I spoke: «sir Weise, you are so worthy,

swes ir mit bet hie an mich gert,
whatever you with request here of me desire,

des solde ich iuch vil gerne biten.
of-that should I you very gladly ask.

ir habt sô vil durch êre erliten,
you have so much for honor suffered,

daz ich iuch morgen mit den spern
that I you tomorrow with the spears

des êrsten wil bestân vil gern.
of-the first will attack very gladly.

nu komt ôt fruo: daz ist mîn bet.»
now come just early: that is my request.»

sus schiet er von mir an der stet.
thus parted he from me on the spot.

1533 Diu naht gemachlîch ende nam.
The night comfortably end took.

sâ dô der ander tac bequam,
at-once when the second day came,

ein schœne messe man dô sanc
a beautiful mass one then sang

ze êren gote. dar nâch unlanc
to honor God. there after not-long

sach man den Weisen zogen her:
saw one the Weise draw hither:

man fuort im mit manic starkez sper.
one led for-him with many-a strong spear.

gezimirt was der biderbe man,
crested was the worthy man,

als ich iu wol gesagen kan:
as I you well tell can:

Sîn helm was lieht alsam ein glas, 1534
His helmet was bright like a glass,

dar umb von drîzehen vedern was
there about of thirteen feathers was

gestôzen ein vil wîter kranz.
planted a very wide wreath.

mit silberpletern kile glanz
with silver-leaves wedge gleaming

was gemachet dar an vil.
was made there on much.

gebunden was an ieslîch kil
bound was on each wedge

von pfânsvedern ein koste grôz.
of peacock-feathers a cost great.

sus fuort den helm der schanden blôz.
thus wore the helmet the of-disgraces bare.

Sîn schilt was swarz nâch zobel var, 1535
His shield was black after sable colored,

dar ûf ein leu von silber gar
there on a lion of silver wholly

was geslagen meisterlîch.
was struck masterfully.

des krône was von golde rîch:
whose crown was of gold rich:

diu lac gar edeler steine vol.
it lay wholly of-noble stones full.

ein samît swartz alsam ein kol
a samite black like a coal

was sîn wâpenroc für wâr,
was his surcoat for true,

gehouwen meisterlîchen gar.
cut-out masterfully wholly.

1536 Leuwen von silber was drûf vil
Lions of silver was thereon much

gestreut. für wâr ich iu daz wil
strewn. for true I you that will

sagen: diu decke was sam gevar
tell: the covering was likewise colored

und ouch vil wol gehouwen gar.
and also very well cut-out wholly.

der biderbe fuort ein starkez sper,
the worthy-one carried a strong spear,

dar an ein banir, gein mir her:
there on a banner, toward me hither:

diu was alsam sîn schilt getân:
it was like his shield made:

sus kom gein mir der biderbe man.
thus came toward me the worthy man.

1537 Ich sage iu, daz dâ mit im reit
I tell you, that there with him rode

der Êren bot, diu schœne meit.
the Honor's messenger, the beautiful maiden.

si het im in die hant gegeben
she had him into the hand given

die banir guot. er dient sîn leben
the banner good. he served his life

den frowen umbe ir habedanc.
the ladies for their thanks.

wart im niht süezer umbevanc,
became him no sweet embrace,

daz was von vrowen missetân,
that was by ladies misdone,

wan er nie valsch gein in gewan.
for he never falseness toward them won.

Ir sült für wâr gelouben daz: 1538
You shall for true believe that:

wol sibenzic ritter oder baz
well seventy knights or better

riten gezimirt mit im her:
rode crested with him hither:

den fuort man mit manic starkez sper.
for-whom led one with many-a strong spear.

dô was ouch ich in den rinc bekomen:
then was also I into the ring come:

ein starkez sper ich het genomen:
a strong spear I had taken:

ich was aldâ gezimirt sô,
I was there crested so,

daz man mîn was ze sehen vrô.
that one of-me was to see glad.

Nu het ouch sich vaste für genomen 1539
Now had also himself fast forward taken

her Kadolt Weise. man sach uns komen
sir Kadold Weise. one saw us come

mit der tyost zesamen sô,
with the joust together so,

daz dâ die drumzen flugen hô.
that there the splinters flew high.

ich stach im von dem halse sîn
I thrust him from the neck his

daz kollir, daz der helm mîn
the collar, that the helmet mine

von sîner tyost vil lûte erklanc.
from his joust very loudly rang.

der tyost muost man mir wizzen danc.
of-the joust must one me know thanks.

1540 Diu tyost sô nâhen wart geriten,
The joust so near was ridden,

daz niemen wânde, daz vermiten
that no-one thought, that avoided

wær dâ diu hurt. der schilde stôz
were there the charge. of-the shields' thrust

wart von uns beiden dâ sô grôz,
was from us both there so great,

daz ez über al daz velt erhal.
that it over all the field resounded.

diu tyost was dâ geriten wal.
the joust was there ridden choice.

man hôrt für wâr di biderben jehen,
one heard for true the worthy-ones declare,

daz schœner tyost nie wart gesehen.
that more-beautiful joust never was seen.

1541 Dô nam ich sâ ein ander sper.
Then took I at-once an other spear.

dô reit gein mir vil balde her
then rode toward me very quickly hither

der Êren bot, diu schœne maget.
the Honor's messenger, the beautiful maiden.

si sprach zuo mir: «iu sî gesaget,
she spoke to me: «to-you be said,

der Weise mac niht gestechen mê.
the Weise may not joust more.

im tuot diu zeswiu hant vil wê:
to-him does the right hand very woe:

sîn dûme ist im ûz dem lide sîn:
his thumb is to-him out-of the joint his.

daz habt für wâr, künic, herre mîn.»
that have for true, king, lord mine.»

Ich sprach: «nu wizzet, schœniu meit: 1542
I spoke: «now know, beautiful maiden:

ez ist mir hertzenlîchen leit.»
it is to-me heartily sorrow.»

dâ mit reit ich fürbaz
there with rode I further

vast in den rinc, geloubet daz,
fast into the ring, believe that,

dâ mich bestuont manic biderbe man:
where me attacked many-a worthy man:

von den wart ez dâ wol getân.
by them was it there well done.

vil drumzen man ûf vliegen sach,
very-many splinters one up fly saw,

mit tyost man starkiu sper zebrach.
with joust one strong spears broke.

Ob ichs iu nant gar sunderlîch, 1543
If I-them you named wholly separately,

di mit mir dâ vil ritterlîch
who with me there very knightly

stâchen, der deuht iuch ze vil;
jousted, of-them would-seem to-you too many;

dâ von ich ez verswîgen wil:
there from I it keep-silent will:

ich tet ôt, swaz ich mohte dâ.
I did just, whatever I might there.

dô riten zuo mir balde sâ
then rode to me quickly at-once

her Parcifâl und her Gâwân,
sir Parzival and sir Gawain,

her Ybân und ouch her Tristram.
sir Iwein and also sir Tristan.

1544 Ieslîcher sprach dô: «herre mîn,
Each spoke then: «lord mine,

wie nu, wie? waz sol daz sîn?
how now, how? what shall that be?

sol niemen stechen hie wan ir,
shall no-one joust here but you,

sô sagt uns reht, war umbe wir
so tell us rightly, for what we

sîn mit iu bekomen her!
are with you come hither!

welt ir verstechen gar diu sper
(if)-will you use-up wholly the spears

al eine, daz ist missetân:
all alone, that is misdone:

ir sült uns ouch stechen lân.»
you shall us also joust let.»

1545 Si brâchen mir dô sâ zehant
They broke me then at-once forthwith

den schilt in zorn von der hant
the shield in anger from the hand

und bunden mir den helm abe
and bound me the helmet off

mit zorneclîcher ungehabe
with angry unruliness

und sprâchen: «künic, iu sî geseit,
and spoke: «king, to-you be said,

ez sî iu liep oder ez sî iu leit,
it be to-you dear or it be to-you sorrow,

jâ verstechet ir tâlanc mêr
yes use-up you today more

mit iwer hant für wâr kein sper!»
with your hand for true no spear!»

Ich sprach: «ich wil ez gern lân. 1546
I spoke: «I will it gladly leave.

sô bindet helm ûf, her Tristram,
so bind helmet on, sir Tristan,

her Parcifâl und her Îther!
sir Parzival and sir Ither!

ich weiz wol, ir bestüent ein her:
I know well, you would-attack an army:

doch nemt zuo iu hern Lanzilet
yet take to you sir Lancelot

und hern Ereck: daz ist mîn bet,
and sir Erec: that is my request,

daz Segramurs ouch mit iu var.
that Segramors also with you go.

ich wil, daz iuch sehse got bewar.»
I will, that you six God keep.»

Des urloubes wârens hôchgemuot: 1547
Of-the leave were-they high-spirited:

wan ir muot was ûf êre guot.
for their spirit was on honor good.

die helm bunden si ûf zehant.
the helmets bound they on forthwith.

hei, waz man schœner tyoste vant!
hey, what one beautiful jousts found!

man hôrt dâ niht wan krachâ krach.
one heard there nothing but crack-ho crack.

manic ritterlîch tyost geschach
many-a knightly joust happened

ûf dem velde dort unde hie.
on the field there and here.

hurtâ, hurtâ, wie ez dâ gie!
charge-ho, charge-ho, how it there went!

1548 Von Tulbinge mîn her Erec
Of Tulln my sir Erec

was für wâr dâ des tages quec:
was for true there of-the day lively:

er tet ez mit dem lîbe alsô,
he did it with the body so,

dâ von sîn lop muost stîgen hô.
there from his praise must climb high.

er verstach fünfzehen sper
he used-up fifteen spears

des tages dâ und für wâr mêr.
of-the day there and for true more.

des tages der êrengernde man
of-the day the honor-desiring man

von reht der biderben lop gewan.
by right the worthy-ones' praise won.

1549 Her Segramurs von Arnstein
Sir Segramors of Arnstein

verstach dâ sper vil gar unklein:
used-up there spears very wholly not-small:

si wâren volleclîchen grôz;
they were fully great;

des er an maniger tyost genôz,
of-that he in many-a joust profited,

wan man dâ von im gern reit:
for one there from him gladly rode:

vil willeclîchen man in meit.
very willingly one him avoided.

für wâr ich iu daz sagen wil,
for true I you that tell will,

daz er doch swante waldes vil.
that he yet made-vanish of-wood much.

Her Lanzilet von Spiegelberc 1550
Sir Lancelot of Spiegelberg

der tet dâ ritterlîchiu werc.
he did there knightly works.

er was ein ritter hôch gemuot:
he was a knight high spirited:

des wart manic tyost dâ von im guot.
of-that was many-a joust there by him good.

er was der vrowen dienestman:
he was the ladies' vassal:

des het erz ofte wol getân.
of-that had he-it often well done.

des tages unmüezic man in sach:
of-the day busy one him saw:

sîn hant vil starker sper verstach.
his hand very-many strong spears used-up.

Von Lebenberc mîn her Tristram 1551
Of Lebenberg my sir Tristan

des tages mit arbeit lop gewan.
of-the day with labor praise won.

ir sult für wâr gelauben daz:
you shall for true believe that:

ez tet des tages dâ niemen baz.
it did of-the day there no-one better.

er scheuhte weder jenen noch disen:
he shunned neither that-one nor this-one:

und wærn ez alle gewesen risen,
and were it all been giants,

er hets alleine wol bestân:
he had-it alone well withstood:

dem tet gelîche der biderbe man.
to-him did alike the worthy man.

1552 Von Lindeniz der vil werde Îther
Of Lindenitz the very worthy Ither

het ein hant, diu hiez sperverzer:
had a hand, which was-called spear-waster:

des tages der sper si vil verzert,
of-the day of-the spears it much wasted,

wan er den rinc mit tyoste wert.
for he the ring with joust defended.

ein ritter der hiez her Reimbot
a knight who was-called sir Reimbot

von Metters, der muost lîden spot:
of Metters, he must suffer mockery:

in stach dâ nider her Îther
him thrust there down sir Ither

mit einer tyost gar sunder wer.
with a joust wholly without defense.

1553 Von Lüentz mîn her Parcifâl
Of Lienz my sir Parzival

dâ swande sper vil âne zal.
there made-vanish spears very without number.

dem biderben was nâch êren wê:
to-the worthy-one was after honors woe:

er ein verstach dâ sper noch mê,
he alone used-up there spears yet more,

danne ie dehein ritter dâ verstach:
than ever any knight there used-up:

des muost er lîden ungemach.
of-that must he suffer discomfort.

sîn ungemach im êre holt:
his discomfort to-him honor won:

im wâren di biderben alle holt.
to-him were the worthy-ones all devoted.

The six and then Gawain and Iwein hold the ring for five days of jousting. On the fifth evening the duke's messenger asks that the jousting end and a tournament be held instead, and the next morning he brings word that the duke will fight under the Preussels' banner. After Mass the knights divide the tournament in a garden, and the troops of both sides are named.

Ez stach der biderbe, êrenrîch 1554
There thrust the worthy-one, honor-rich

ein ritter dâ nider, der hiez Dietrîch:
a knight there down, who was-called Dietrich:

von Smidâ sô was er genant.
of Schmida so was he named.

den stach dâ nider sîn zeswiu hant,
him thrust there down his right hand,

daz er gar sinnelôs gelac
that he wholly senseless lay

biz an den âbent al den tac.
until to the evening all the day.

daz was doch sînen vriunden leit:
that was yet to-his friends sorrow:

von den wart ez vil schiere verkleit.
by them was it very soon lamented.

Die sehse, di ich hie hân genant, 1555
The six, whom I here have named,

di wurden ofte dâ an gerant.
they were often there at run.

dâ was vil manic biderbe man:
there was very many-a worthy man:

des wurden ofte sî bestân.
of-that were often they attacked.

des werten sich di biderben sô,
of-that defended themselves the worthy-ones so,

daz dâ ir lop muost stîgen hô.
that there their praise must climb high.

dâ wart manic schœne tyost geriten
there was many-a beautiful joust ridden

und vil manic harnaschrinc versniten.
and very many-a mail-ring cut.

1556 Diu ritterschaft wert al den tac.
The chivalry lasted all the day.

manic helm und collir dâ gelac
many-a helmet and collar there lay

ûf der erde herrenlôs.
on the earth lordless.

den schilt vil maniger dâ verlôs,
the shield very many-a-one there lost,

daz man im in stach verre von der hant
that one him it thrust far from the hand

zebrosten nider ûf daz lant.
shattered down onto the land.

dâ lac vil schîben unde sper
there lay very-many discs and spears

dâ ûf dem velde hin unde her.
there on the field thither and hither.

1557 Ir sült für wâr gelauben daz:
You shall for true believe that:

wol sibenzic ritter oder baz
well seventy knights or better

stâchen mit den sehsen dâ.
jousted with the six there.

ouch hânt sît selten anderswâ
also have since seldom elsewhere

(für wâr ich iu daz sagen wil)
(for true I you that tell will)

sehs ritter starker sper sô vil
six knights of-strong spears so many

verstochen, als von in geschach:
used-up, as by them happened:

ir hant wol hundert sper verstach.
their hand well hundred spears used-up.

Dô sach ich, daz gedranc an gie 1558
Then saw I, that throng on went

die sehsse mit tyost dort unde hie:
the six with joust there and here:

des moht ich langer niht vertragen.
that might I longer not bear.

dô hiez ich snellîchen sagen
then bade I quickly tell

von Liehtenstein hern Gâwân,
of Liechtenstein sir Gawain,

von Landesêre hern Ywân,
of Landesere sir Iwein,

daz sî dar kœmen ûf den rinc:
that they thither came onto the ring:

daz gebot was in ein liebe dinc.
the command was to-them a dear thing.

1559 Si enblienden ez ir handen dâ
They imposed it on-their hands there
dêswâr vil ritterlîchen sâ.
truly very knightly at-once.
ir beider muot nâch êren ranc:
their both spirit after honors strove:
man hôrt von in dâ helm klanc
one heard from them there helmets' clang
und manigen schœnen schildes stôz.
and many-a beautiful shield's thrust.
der spere krachen wart dâ grôz.
the spears' cracking was there great.
von tyost die schilde dâ sich kluben,
from joust the shields there themselves split,
daz sprîzel ofte hôhe stuben.
that splinters often high flew.

1560 Daz spere krachen was dâ grôz.
The spears' cracking was there great.
holerfloyten, sumberdôz,
hollow-flutes, kettle-drum-sound,
pusûnen und schalmyen schal
trumpets and shawms' clamor
moht niemen dâ gehœren wal.
might no-one there hear choice.
der tyost man dâ gar wal vant.
of-the joust one there wholly choice found.
swelch ritter dâ den helm abe bant,
whichever knight there the helmet off bound,
des beitet man niht mit tyoste dâ,
for-him waited one not with joust there,
als man tuot oft doch anderswâ.
as one does often yet elsewhere.

Dâ randen zwên ofte einen an: 1561
There ran two often one at:

der dem di tyost dort an gewan;
who to-him the joust there at won;

ze driviers der sîn sper verstach;
at crossing who his spear used-up;

sô was dem ûf di tyost sô gâch,
so was to-him on the joust so hasty,

daz er zer winster dâ sîn sper
that he at-the left there his spear

verstach; dem was dâ alze ger;
used-up; to-him was there all-too desire;

dô kom man dort den an gerant,
then came one there him at running,

ê ie kœm sper dâ in sîn hant.
before ever came spear there into his hand.

Mit disen freuden ende nam 1562
With these joys end took

der tac: diu vinster naht bequam,
the day: the dark night came,

di maniger niht ungern sach.
which many-a-one not unwillingly saw.

dô fuoren sî an ir gemach,
then went they to their ease,

die dâ von müede liten nôt.
who there from tired suffered distress.

von tyost dâ arm wâren rôt,
from joust there arms were red,

geswollen, swarz und dar zuo blâ.
swollen, black and there to blue.

dem war daz dort, dem war daz dâ.
to-one was that there, to-one was that here.

1563 Des andern morgens harte fruo
Of-the second morning very early

di biderben zogten aber zuo,
the worthy-ones drew again to,

gezimirt dêswâr wunneclîch.
crested truly delightfully.

ir was vil maniger muotes rîch:
of-them was very many-a-one of-spirit rich:

daz wart volleclîchen schîn.
that became fully seen.

vil maniger dient der vrowen sîn,
very many-a-one served the lady his,

daz er den puneiz alsô reit
that he the charge so rode

daz ez dem andern wart vil leit.
that it to-the other became very sorrow.

1564 Ez wart des tages aber guot getân
It was of-the day again well done

von manigem minnegernden man.
by many-a love-desiring man.

ûf dem velde hie unde dort
on the field here and there

wart loch mit sper durch schilt gebort.
was hole with spear through shield bored.

di von der tavelrunde sich
those of the Round-Table themselves

wol werten dâ: des freut ich mich.
well defended there: of-that rejoiced I myself.

ez was ouch müezic niht mîn hant:
it was also idle not my hand:

von mir wart ouch dâ sper verswant.
by me was also there spear used-up.

An disem buoch ist niht sô vil 1565
In this book is not so much

sô von tyostiren: dâ von wil
as of jousting: there from will

ichz iu kürzen, swâ ich mac.
I-it you shorten, wherever I may.

ditz wert unz an den fünften tac,
this lasted until to the fifth day,

daz wir ie des morgens fruo
that we ever of-the morning early

griffen mit tyostiren zuo
set with jousting to

und triben daz unz an den âbent gâr:
and drove that until to the evening wholly:

bî mîner höfscheit, daz ist wâr.
by my courtliness, that is true.

Nu merket reht, waz ich iu sage! 1566
Now mark rightly, what I you tell!

des âbentes an dem fünften tage
of-the evening on the fifth day

kom ein bote zuo mir geriten:
came a messenger to me ridden:

der gruozte mich mit höfschen siten
who greeted me with courtly manners

und sprach: «künic Artûs, möht ez sîn,
and spoke: «king Arthur, might it be,

ich solt iuch von dem herren mîn
I should you from the lord mine

gesprechen für wâr gar heimlîch.»
speak for true wholly secretly.»

sô sprach der bote zühte rîch.
so spoke the messenger of-courtesy rich.

1567 Ich sprach: «des bin ich iu bereit.»
I spoke: «of-that am I to-you ready.»

mit im ich von den leuten reit.
with him I from the people rode.

dô sprach er: «werder künic rîch,
then spoke he: «worthy king mighty,

iu hât der fürste Friderîch
to-you has the prince Frederick

bî mir enboten alsô her,
by me announced so hither,

daz er vil schône wil driu sper
that he very beautifully will three spears

gein iu verstechen hie enzwei.
toward you use-up here in-two.

daz sol geschehen vor dem turney.
that shall happen before the tournament.

1568 Er gibt, ez sî hie alsô vil
He declares, it be here so much

getyostiret, daz er iuch des wil
jousted, that he you of-that will

biten, daz irz durch in lât,
ask, that you-it for him leave,

wan er vil grôze unmuoze hât.
for he very great busyness has.

ir sült den turney teilen lân,
you shall the tournament divide let,

dâ mit daz tyostiren understân:
there with the jousting stop:

des bitet iuch der herre mîn
of-that asks you the lord mine

immer durch den dienest sîn.»
ever for the service his.»

Ich sprach: «ich tuon reht, swaz er wil. 1569
I spoke: «I do right, whatever he will.

es sî lützel oder vil,
it be little or much,

des bin ich alles im bereit
of-that am I all to-him ready

durch sîn vil hôhe werdicheit.
for his very high worthiness.

du solt sîn alle di ritter biten
thou shalt of-it all the knights ask

von im mit zühteclîchen siten,
from him with courteous manners,

daz sî die zuht gein im begân
that they the courtesy toward him commit

daz sî daz tjostiren durch in lân.»
that they the jousting for him leave.»

Der bot reit dô alzehant 1570
The messenger rode then forthwith

wider in den rinc, dâ er vant
back into the ring, where he found

der ritter halden harte vil.
of-the knights halting very many.

er sprach zuo in: «vil gern ich wil
he spoke to them: «very gladly I will

iu allen hie sagende sîn
to-you all here telling be

ein botschaft von dem herren mîn,
a message from the lord mine,

dem werden fürsten Friderîch:
the worthy prince Frederick:

er heizet iuch grüezen minneclîch
he bids you greet lovingly

1571 Iuch bitet der werde herre mîn
You asks the worthy lord mine

daz ir daz tyostiren lât sîn.
that you the jousting let be.

daz ir turniret, daz ist sîn rât,
that you tourney, that is his counsel,

wan er vil grôze unmuoze hât.
for he very great busyness has.

er muoz von hinnen, daz ist wâr:
he must from hence, that is true:

sô verdurbe der turney gar.
so would-perish the tournament wholly.

daz wære im leit, solt daz geschehen;
that were to-him sorrow, should that happen;

wan er in gern wolde sehen.»
for he it gladly would see.»

1572 Dô sprach der schenke von Habechspach:
Then spoke the cupbearer of Habsbach:

«iwerm herren ist ze dem turney gâch.
«to-your lord is to the tournament hasty.

wil aber selbe er wâpen hie tragen
(if)-will however himself he arms here bear

(vil werder bot, daz sült ir sagen),
(very worthy messenger, that shall you tell),

sô teile wir den turney
so divide we the tournament

ûf in und ûf den künic enzwei.
on him and on the king in-two.

und kœmen si beide in eine schar,
and came they both into one troop,

sô heten die andern verloren gar.»
so had the others lost wholly.»

Der bot sprach: «des enweiz ich niht; 1573
The messenger spoke: «of-that know I not;

ich weiz für wâr, daz er siht
I know for true, that he sees

den turney. des hôrt ich in gehen,
the tournament. that heard I him declare,

er wolde in endelîche sehen.
he would it truly see.

ist daz ich iu dran dienen sol,
(if)-is that I you therein serve shall,

sô ervar ich iu daz wol,
so learn I for-you that well,

ob er welle hie wâpen tragen,
whether he will here arms bear,

und wil ich iu daz hînt wider sagen.»
and will I you that tonight back tell.»

Die ritter sprâchen alle duo: 1574
The knights spoke all then:

«wir süln ze kirchen komen fruo
«we shall to church come early

und teilen dâ den turnei
and divide there the tournament

…
(lacuna)

geschiht daz fruo, daz ist uns guot:
happens that early, that is to-us good:

hie ist manic ritter hôchgemuot;
here is many-a knight high-spirited;

daz den des zerinne niht,
that to-them of-that run-out not,

als offte an maneger stat geschiht.»
as often in many-a place happens.»

1575 Mit freuden schiede wir uns dâ.
With joys parted we ourselves there.

manneclîch reit schône sâ,
each-man rode beautifully at-once,

dâ er die naht vant guot gemach.
where he the night found good ease.

sâ dô der ander tac ûf brach,
at-once when the second day up broke,

dô reit zuo mir vil snelleclîch
then rode to me very quickly

des fürsten bot ûz Œsterrîch.
the prince's messenger out-of Austria.

der gruozt mich von dem herren sîn:
he greeted me from the lord his:

des danct mit zühten im der munt mîn.
for-that thanked with courtesies him the mouth mine.

1576 Er sprach: «iu hât der herre mîn
He spoke: «to-you has the lord mine

enboten ôt aber den dienest sîn
announced just again the service his

und hiez iu daz verholne sagen,
and bade you that secretly tell,

er wolde hie selbe wâpen tragen
he would here himself arms bear

und wolde mit iu hie endelîch
and would with you here truly

driu sper verstechen ritterlîch.
three spears use-up knightly.

er wil durch diu vil reinen wîp
he will for the very pure women

urbaren hie ritterlîch den lîp.
use here knightly the body.

Ez wil der werde herre mîn 1577
It will the worthy lord mine

hie under der Briuzel banir sîn:
here under the Preussels' banner be:

mit den wil er iuch bestân.
with them will he you attack.

ir müezet vil guot helfe hân,
you must very good help have,

oder er tuot iuch alumbe hie.
or he makes you over here.

ich gesach in hôchgemuoter nie.
I saw him more-high-spirited never.

er ist gemeit und dar zuo vrô:
he is cheerful and there to glad:

sîn muot der stât von vrowen hô.»
his spirit it stands from ladies high.»

Ich sprach: «ich mac vor im genesen, 1578
I spoke: «I may before him recover,

und wil mir got genædic wesen.
and (if)-will to-me God gracious be.

ê daz er umbe tuo mich hie,
before that he over throws me here,

nôt müezen lîden ritters knie
distress must suffer knight's knee

von maniger hurteclîchen vart.
from many-a charging course.

er vindet an uns gegenhart.
he finds in us counter-hard.

swie hôhes muotes sîn lîp vert,
however of-high spirit his person goes,

im wirt daz velt alhie gewert.»
to-him is the field here defended.»

Diu rede geschach des morgens fruo:
The speech happened in-the morning early:

ze kirchen fuor wir alle duo.
to church went we all then.

dô sich diu messe verendet dâ,
when itself the mass ended there,

dô fuor wir alle schône sâ
then went we all beautifully at-once

in einen garten wunneclîch:
into a garden delightful:

dar kom manic ritter muotes rîch.
thither came many-a knight of-spirit rich.

den turney teilet man alzehant.
the tournament divided one forthwith.

wie, daz tuon ich iu wol bekant:
how, that make I you well known:

Ich was selbe zehent komen dar:
I was self tenth come thither:

dô het gemêret sich mîn schar
then had increased itself my troop

von den, die tavelrunde stat
by those, who Round-Table place

wurben dâ mit ritters tât:
won there with knight's deed:

der wâren zehen und dar zuo drî.
of-them were ten and there to three.

der hertze was vor schanden vrî:
whose heart was from disgraces free:

si wâren ritterlîch gemuot,
they were knightly spirited,

vor ritters wandel wol behuot.
from knight's blemish well guarded.

Zuo mîner schar man teilen sach 1581
To my troop one allot saw

den schenken sâ von Habechsbach,
the cupbearer at-once of Habsbach,

der ie mit arbeit êre holt.
who ever with labor honor won.

zuo mir geviel ouch her Kadolt:
to me fell also sir Kadold:

der biderbe Weise was er genant,
the worthy Weise was he named,

von zuht, von tugenden wît erkant.
for courtesy, for virtues widely known.

er was vor wandel gar behuot:
he was from blemish wholly guarded:

ich gesach nie ritter baz gemuot.
I saw never knight better spirited.

Zuo mir geviel ouch her Heinrîch 1582
To me fell also sir Heinrich

von Liehtenstein, der muotes rîch.
of Liechtenstein, the of-spirit rich.

von Haselowe der biderbe man
of Haslau the worthy man

geviel ouch zuo mir, der nie gewan
fell also to me, who never won

deheinen muot, der êre entrant:
any spirit, that from-honor escaped:

her Otte sô was er genant.
sir Otto so was he named.

sîn lîp was alles wandels vrî,
his person was of-all blemish free,

im was vil hôhiu tugende bî.
to-him was very high virtue by.

1583 Gein mir ze were geschaffet wart
Against me to defense appointed was

her Heinrîch und her Wernhart:
sir Heinrich and sir Wernhard:

die lebten bêde vil ritterlîch.
they lived both very knightly.

des fürsten gesinde ûz Œsterrîch
the prince's household out-of Austria

viel mit sîner schar zuo in.
fell with his troop to them.

ez was ir muot und ouch ir sin,
it was their spirit and also their mind,

daz sî des tages gewunnen guot
that they of-the day won goods

und êren vil: sus stuont ir muot.
and of-honors much: thus stood their spirit.

1584 Von Mîssowe mîn her Otte sâ
Of Meissau my sir Otto at-once

geviel in ouch ze helfe dâ.
fell to-them also to help there.

von Vrônehoven mîn her Kol
of Fronhofen my sir Kol

geviel zuo in: der tet ez wol
fell to them: who did it well

offte, daz rede ich âne spot.
often, that speak I without mockery.

von Valkenberc mîn her Râpot
of Falkenberg my sir Rapoto

geviel zuo in, der zornic man,
fell to them, the wrathful man,

der offte vlüeche vil gewan.
who often curses many won.

Der turney was geteilet sô: 1585
The tournament was divided so:

des wâren die hôchgemuoten vrô.
of-that were the high-spirited-ones glad.

wir zogten ûf daz velt zehant,
we drew onto the field forthwith,

die helm man snellîch ûf bant,
the helmets one quickly up bound,

und scharten uns dort unde hie.
and formed-troops ourselves there and here.

nu hœret mich! ich sage iu, wie:
now hear me! I tell you, how:

vier schar dâ wurden und niht mê.
four troops there became and not more.

den biderben was nâch êren wê.
to-the worthy-ones was after honors woe.

VIII · THE TOURNAMENT UNDONE

The four troops form, and Kadold Weise wins two horses in the melee, but the duke's messenger orders the Preussel and then his household to unhelm, since the duke has fallen into ill-humor, and the tournament breaks up. At Himberg the duke forbids Ulrich to ride to Krumau, since the king of Bohemia is his enemy, and Kadold holds that tournament with honor. When winter comes, Ulrich mocks the weather-worriers: his joy lies in a lady, and no season takes it.

Des fürsten gesinde ûz Œsterrîch 1586
The prince's household out-of Austria

die scharten sich dô ritterlîch.
they formed-troops themselves then knightly.

zuo den sich scharn dâ began
to whom himself form-troop there began

von Mîssowe der vil biderbe man.
of Meissau the very worthy man.

diu schar, diu den turney solde heben,
the troop, which the tournament should raise,

si stapften bî einander eben
they stepped by one-another even

und habten sich zesamne wol,
and held themselves together well,

als man ze rehte gein vîenden sol.
as one by right toward enemies shall.

1587 Dâ reit ein schar vil schœne nâch
There rode a troop very beautifully after

geschart vil eben: ir was niht gâch.
formed very even: to-them was not hasty.

in der schar reit mîn her Kol
in the troop rode my sir Kol

von Vrônhoven gezimirt wol.
of Fronhofen crested well.

die Priuzel in der schar ouch riten,
the Preussel in the troop also rode,

gezimirt wol nâch ritters siten.
crested well after knight's customs.

her Râpot in der schar ouch reit
sir Rapoto in the troop also rode

von Valkenperc, der ungemeit.
of Falkenberg, the cheerless-one.

1588 Zuo mîner schar sich schône schart
To my troop himself beautifully formed

ein ritter, der sich het bewart
a knight, who himself had guarded

vor allem dem, daz missestât:
from all that, which misbecomes:

sîn lîp begie manic ritters tât
his person committed many-a knight's deed

mit sîner ellenthaften hant:
with his valiant hand:

her Kadolt Weise was er genant.
sir Kadold Weise was he named.

er was der vrowen dienestman:
he was the ladies' vassal:

dâ von er hôhen lop gewan.
there from he high praise won.

Nâch mîner schar man stapfen sach 1589
After my troop one step saw

geschart wol die von Habechspach.
formed well those of Habsbach.

bî den geschart reit ritterlîch
by them formed rode knightly

von Liehtenstein mîn her Heinrîch.
of Liechtenstein my sir Heinrich.

von Haselowe der biderbe man,
of Haslau the worthy man,

her Otte, reit dâ, der nie gewan
sir Otto, rode there, who never won

deheinen unritterlîchen muot:
any unknightly spirit:

er was vor schanden gar behuot.
he was from disgraces wholly guarded.

1590 Mit disen scharn wir schône hie
With these troops we beautifully here
zesamne stapften. nu hœret, wie
together stepped. now hear, how
her Kadolt Weise zwei ros gewan
sir Kadold Weise two horses won
für wâr reht als ein biderbe man:
for true right as a worthy man:
in die malîe rant er für:
into the melee ran he forth:
wer dâ diu ros gein im verlür,
who there the horses to him lost,
die nenne ich iu hie zehant:
them name I you here forthwith:
si wâren dâ beide wol bekant.
they were there both well known.

1591 Von Capellen her Pilgerîn,
Of Kapellen sir Pilgrim,
her Reimbot von Newalin,
sir Reimbot of Newalin,
sus wâren genant die zwêne man,
thus were named the two men,
den her Kadolt an gewan
from-whom sir Kadold at won
diu orsse dâ dêswâr ritterlîch.
the horses there truly knightly.
des fürsten bot ûz Œsterrîch
the prince's messenger out-of Austria
kom dâ gerant vil snelle zuo:
came there running very quickly to:
ez was dannoch des morgens fruo.
it was still in-the morning early.

Er reit vil snellîchen dar, 1592
He rode very quickly thither,

dâ die Priuzel under ir schar
where the Preussel under their troop

in hôhem muote schône riten,
in high spirit beautifully rode,

gezimirt wol nâch ritters siten.
crested well after knight's customs.

dô er die bruoder beide ersach,
when he the brothers both saw,

der bot vil blœdeclîchen sprach:
the messenger very timidly spoke:

«ir sült iwer turniren lâzen sîn!
«you shall your tourneying let be!

daz gebiutet iu der herre mîn.
that commands you the lord mine.

Er mage iu niht gehelfen hie; 1593
He may you not help here;

ich gesach in ungemuoter nie,
I saw him more-cheerless never,

er ist in ungemüete komen:
he is into ill-humor come:

im ist sîn vreude gar benomen.
to-him is his joy wholly taken.

ich hôrt in ûz der mâze klagen:
I heard him beyond the measure lament:

war umbe, daz getar ich niemen sagen:
for what, that dare I no-one tell:

ez ist ein sô gar swach geschiht,
it is a so wholly base happening,

daz ichs iu getar gesagen niht.»
that I-it you dare tell not.»

1594 Die Preuzel sprâchen: «daz ist uns leit.
The Preussel spoke: «that is to-us sorrow.

habt irz den rittern ouch geseit,
have you-it to-the knights also said,

die vor uns rîtent in der schar?»
who before us ride in the troop?»

«niht.» «nu rîtet zuo in dar:
«not.» «now ride to them thither:

sagt in, waz uns enboten habe
tell them, what to-us announced have

unser herre, und heizet si abe
our lord, and bid them off

die helm binden: daz ist uns guot,
the helmets bind: that is to-us good,

sît unser herre ist ungemuot.»
since our lord is ill-spirited.»

1595 Der bot reit dô alzehant,
The messenger rode then forthwith,

da er sînes herren gesinde vant.
where he of-his lord household found.

den seit er, als er het jenen geseit,
to-them told he, as he had to-those told,

(daz was in hertzenlîchen leit)
(that was to-them heartily sorrow)

von sînes herren ungehabe:
from his lord's distress:

er hiez si binden helme abe.
he bade them bind helmets off.

…
(lacuna)

vil maniger helme dô abe bant.
very many-a-one helmets then off bound.

Dô ichs die helme abe binden sach, 1596
When I-them the helmets off bind saw,

ze mînen geverten ich dô sprach:
to my companions I then spoke:

«si bindent abe dort helme gar,
«they bind off there helmets wholly,

die gein uns habent in der schar.
who against us hold in the troop.

mich wundert, waz in sî geschehen.
me wonders, what to-them be happened.

und ist ez iu liep, ich heiz besehen.»
and (if)-is it to-you dear, I bid look.»

si sprâchen: «ez ist unser rât,
they spoke: «it is our counsel,

daz irz iu balde ervaren lât.»
that you-it you quickly learn let.»

Von mir ein kneht sâ wart gesant, 1597
From me a servant at-once was sent,

dâ er si sunder helme vant.
where he them without helmets found.

dô sprach der wol gezogne knabe:
then spoke the well bred boy:

«sagt an, war umbe habt ir abe
«say on, for what have you off

die helme gebunden? daz sult ir
the helmets bound? that shall you

der schar enbieten hin bî mir,
to-the troop announce thither by me,

die gegen iu schône stapfent her.
which toward you beautifully step hither.

gein iu ist ritterschaft ir ger.»
toward you is chivalry their desire.»

1598 Dô sprach ir einer zorniclîch:
Then spoke of-them one wrathfully:

«uns hât mîn herre ûz Œsterrîch
«us has my lord out-of Austria

enboten bî den triuwen mîn,
announced by the faithfulness mine,

daz wir hie turniren lâzen sîn:
that we here tourneying let be:

daz ist uns hertzenlîchen leit.
that is to-us heartily sorrow.

juncherre, daz sî iu geseit:
young-lord, that be to-you said:

wir müezen im sîn undertân,
we must to-him be subject,

durch in beidiu tuon und lân.»
for him both do and leave.»

1599 Der bote reit zuo uns zehant
The messenger rode to us forthwith

und tet uns disiu mære bekant,
and made us these tidings known,

daz wir daz turniren müezen lân.
that we the tourneying must leave.

des wart dâ trûric vil manic man.
of-that became there sad very many-a man.

si zogten von uns in die stat.
they drew from us into the town.

swaz mans geflêhet und gebat,
whatever one-them besought and begged,

swes mans hœnlîch an geschrê,
whatever one-them scornfully at cried,

si beliben ûf dem velde niht mê.
they stayed on the field not more.

Der turney alsus endet sich: 1600
The tournament thus ended itself:

des sach für wâr man trûren mich.
of-that saw for true one sorrow me.

in die stat wir riten dô:
into the town we rode then:

ich was von hertzen gar unfrô.
I was from heart wholly unglad.

die naht belibe wir alle dâ.
the night stayed we all there.

des andern morgens fuor wir sâ,
of-the second morning went we at-once,

der sô hin und der ander her.
this-one so thither and the other hither.

gein Krumbenouwe was mîn ger.
toward Krumau was my desire.

Des morgens ich gein Wiene reit. 1601
In-the morning I toward Vienna rode.

ein edel knappe wol gekleit,
a noble squire well clad,

des kleider wâren wol gesniten,
whose clothes were well cut,

er kom die strâzze gein mir geriten.
he came the road toward me ridden.

er sprach: «iu hât der herre mîn
he spoke: «to-you has the lord mine

enboten bî mir den dienest sîn,
announced by me the service his,

der rîche fürst ûz Œsterrîch,
the mighty prince out-of Austria,

der hôch geborne Friderîch.
the high born Frederick.

1602 Er hiez iuch des mit senften siten
He bade you of-that with gentle manners
mich vil zühteclîchen biten,
me very courteously ask,
daz ir ze Hintperc zuo im ritet
that you to Himberg to him ride
und gegen Wiene die reise mitet:
and toward Vienna the journey avoid:
daz sult ir lân durch in geschehen.
that shall you let for him happen.
er wil iuch für wâr gern sehen:
he will you for true gladly see:
iwer reise zuo im rehte stât,
your journey to him rightly stands,
sît daz er iuz enboten hât.»
since that he you-it announced has.»

1603 Ich sprach: «ich rîte mit iu dâ hin.
I spoke: «I ride with you there thither.
ich trage im diensthaften sin:
I bear him serviceable mind:
dâ von tuon ich rehte, swaz er wil,
there from do I right, whatever he will,
es sî lützel oder vil.»
it be little or much.»
zehant ich gegen Hintberc reit:
forthwith I toward Himberg rode:
ich was vil ritterlîch gekleit.
I was very knightly clad.
mit mir reit dar mîn her Tristran,
with me rode thither my sir Tristan,
von Lebenperc der biderbe man.
of Lebenberg the worthy man.

Ze Hintperc man mich wol enpfie. 1604
At Himberg one me well received.

manic edel ritter gegen mir gie:
many-a noble knight toward me went:

mich gruozt ouch für wâr minneclîch
me greeted also for true lovingly

der werde fürst ûz Œsterrîch.
the worthy prince out-of Austria.

er sprach: «vil werder künic Artûs,
he spoke: «very worthy king Arthur,

sît willekomen her in mîn hûs.
be welcome hither into my house.

ich muoz iu des von wârheit jehen,
I must you of-that by truth declare,

daz ich vil gern iuch hân gesehen.»
that I very gladly you have seen.»

Er nam mich güetlîch bî der hant 1605
He took me kindly by the hand

und wîset mich von dan zehant.
and led me from thence forthwith.

in ein lin er sitzen gie:
in a window he sit went:

der biderbe fürst mich es niht erlie,
the worthy prince me of-it not spared,

ich müeste zuo im sitzen dâ.
I must to him sit there.

der hôchgeborne der sprach sâ:
the high-born he spoke at-once:

«sagt an, habt ir ze Bêheim muot
«say on, have you to Bohemia mind

ze varn? daz dunket mich niht guot.
to go? that seems me not good.

1606 Ir sült für wâr gelauben daz:
You shall for true believe that:

mir treit der künc von Bêheim haz.
to-me bears the king of Bohemia hate.

und woldet ir danne zuo im varn,
and would you then to him go,

sô kundet ir daz niht bewarn,
so could you that not keep,

er vienge iuch dâ ze haze mir.
he would-catch you there to hate to-me.

dâ von sult hie belîben ir:
there from shall here remain you:

ich gebiut iu bî den hulden mîn,
I command you by the favor mine,

daz ir iwer vart dar lâzet sîn.»
that you your journey thither let be.»

1607 «Herre, ich bin iu undertân.
«Lord, I am to-you subject.

ich sol durch iuch tuon unde lân,
I shall for you do and leave,

swaz ir welt: daz ist mîn reht.
whatever you will: that is my right.

vil hertzenlieber herre, seht,
very heart-dear lord, see,

ob ich ze dem turney niht envar,
if I to the tournament not go,

wie ich mîn êre danne bewar.
how I my honor then guard.

dar an sult ir bedenken mich
there in shall you consider me

durch iwer tugent: des bit ich.»
for your virtue: of-that bid I.»

Er sprach: «dar an wil ich bewarn 1608
He spoke: «there in will I keep

iuch. ich lâzze dar niemen varn
you. I let thither no-one go

von mînem lande: daz sült ir
from my land: that shall you

für wârheit wol gelouben mir.
for truth well believe me.

swer dar vert, daz ist wider mich.
whoever thither goes, that is against me.

ich wil niht, daz der künc dâ sich
I will not, that the king there himself

vergâhe gein mir mit pfande dâ:
hastily-avenge toward me with pledge there:

dâ von sô turniret anderswâ!»
there from so tourney elsewhere!»

Sus schiet ich von dem herren mîn 1609
Thus parted I from the lord mine

und muost daz turniren lâzen sîn
and must the tourneying let be

ze Krumbenouwe: daz ist alsô,
at Krumau: that is so,

des was ich hertzenlîch unvrô.
of-that was I heartily unglad.

doch wart diu ritterschaft dâ guot:
yet became the chivalry there good:

her Kadolt Weise der hôch gemuot
sir Kadold Weise the high spirited-one

der verendet sî nâch êren wol.
he ended it after honors well.

des wart manic lant sîns lobes vol.
of-that became many-a land of-his praise full.

1610 Der sumer frœlîch ende nam:
The summer joyfully end took:

der kalte winder aber quam:
the cold winter again came:

des sach man trûren manigen man.
of-that saw one sorrow many-a man.

da geschiht iedoch ein wunder an:
there happens yet a wonder on:

swer trûret von des winders zît
whoever sorrows from the winter's time

und swem der sumer freude gît,
and to-whom the summer joy gives,

der lebt alsam diu vogelîn,
he lives like the little-birds,

die sich freunt von des meyen schîn.
who themselves gladden from the May's shine.

1611 Alsô der sumer ende hât,
When the summer end has,

swem danne sîn hôher muot zergât,
whom then his high spirit passes,

der heizet wetersorger wol:
he is-called weather-worrier well:

von reht man in sus nennen sol.
by right one him thus name shall.

sît im der sumer freude gît
since him the summer joy gives

und al sîn wunne gar an im lît,
and all his delight wholly on it lies,

sô muoz er sîn ouch ungemuot,
so must he be also ill-spirited,

swenne daz weter übel tuot.
whenever the weather ill does.

Mîn munt von wârheit iu des giht: 1612
My mouth by truth you of-that declares:

der bin ich für wâr einer niht.
of-them am I for true one not.

mîn freude an einem wîbe lît:
my joy on a woman lies:

diu ist mîner freuden meyenzît.
she is of-my joys May-time.

ir lîp vil manige tugende hât:
her person very many virtues has:

diu sælde mîn gar an ir stât.
the bliss mine wholly on her stands.

si ist mir für al mîn trûren guot:
she is to-me for all my sadness good:

diu guot gibt mir hôhen muot.
the good-one gives me high spirit.

Si gibt mir hôher freuden vil: 1613
She gives me of-high joys much:

dâ von wil ich, swaz si wil.
there from will I, whatever she will.

ich wil ir dienen mîne tage,
I will her serve my days,

sô mit freuden, sô mit klage.
so with joys, so with lament.

swaz liebes leides mir geschiht,
whatever of-love of-sorrow to-me happens,

sô kum ich ûz ir dienest niht.
so come I out-of her service not.

ich diene ir immer, als ich sol.
I serve her ever, as I shall.

diu guot mac mir gelônen wol.
the good-one may me reward well.

1614 Si hât mir hôhen muot gegeben,
She has me high spirit given,

si hât gegeben mir freuden leben.
she has given me of-joys life.

mich hât ir güet gemachet frô:
me has her goodness made glad:

von ir stât mir daz hertze hô,
from her stands to-me the heart high,

von ir bin ich gar trûrens vrî.
from her am I wholly of-sadness free.

des wünsch ich, daz si sælic sî.
of-that wish I, that she blessed be.

ich bin ir immer undertân
I am to-her ever subject

mit dienst, swaz ich gedienen kan.
with service, whatever I serve can.

1615 Si ist mir lieber, danne iht sî;
She is to-me dearer, than anything be;

ich bin gein ir gar wankes vrî,
I am toward her wholly of-wavering free,

ich diene ir sus, ich diene ir sô,
I serve her thus, I serve her so,

ich bin von ir vrô, vrô, vrô.
I am from her glad, glad, glad.

swie ez witer ze aller zît,
however it weathers at all time,

ir güete mir die freude gît,
her goodness to-me the joy gives,

die mir daz weter swendet niht:
which to-me the weather makes-vanish not:

ich bin doch frô, swaz mir geschiht.
I am yet glad, whatever to-me happens.

Ich weiz wol, daz ein ieslîch man 1616
I know well, that an each man

nimmer trûric werden kan,
never sad become can,

der mit triwen hât ein wîp
who with faithfulness has a woman

liep alsô sîn selbes lîp.
dear as his own person.

und ist daz ir lîp tugende hât,
and (if)-is that her person virtues has,

von ir sîn trûren gar zergât.
from her his sadness wholly passes.

ez sî winder, sumerzît,
it be winter, summertime,

ir güete im doch freude gît.
her goodness to-him yet joy gives.

Ein wîp, diu schœne und güete hât 1617
A woman, who beauty and goodness has

und sich schamt aller missetât,
and herself shames of-all misdeed,

diu ist wol von ir schœne guot:
she is well from her beauty good:

sô tuot ir schœne ir güetlîch muot.
so does her beauty her kindly spirit.

swer der dienet sunder wanc
whoever her serves without wavering

umbe ir vil süezen habedanc,
for her very sweet thanks,

und ob dem liep von ir geschiht,
and if to-him love from her happens,

der sol getrûren nimmer niht.
he shall sorrow never anything.

Ulrich praises his lady's brown, red, and white and sings Song XXXIX. Then he takes issue with the masters' dawn songs: no wise lady would let a peasant watchman know her secret, and a maiden keeps it better. He reflects on lovers who must part at day, and sings Song XL, a dawn song in which a maiden wakes the lovers and the lady hides the knight for a day. In summer he wishes to dwell in his lady's heart and sings Song XLI.

1618 Ir güetlîch süeze redenter munt
Her kindly sweet speaking mouth

tuot sînem hertzen freude kunt.
makes to-his heart joy known.

und ist er sô gemuot ein man,
and (if)-is he so spirited a man,

daz er ir êren hüeten kan
that he her honor guard can

mit rehten triwen, als er sol,
with right faithfulness, as he shall,

sô hât er freude und ist im wol.
so has he joy and is to-him well.

der beider lîp hât got gegeben
of-them both person has God given

ein freudenbernde, süezze leben.
a joy-bearing, sweet life.

Mîn frowe ir lîp vil schône hât 1619
My lady her person very beautifully has

behuot vor unvrowenlîcher tât.
guarded from unladylike deed.

des hân ich liep für elliu wîp
of-that have I dear before all women

ir prûn, rôt, wîzzen, süezen lîp.
her brown, red, white, sweet person.

wol mich, daz ich si ie gesach,
well me, that I her ever saw,

und wol mich, daz ich nie gebrach
and well me, that I never broke

mîn ritterlîche stæte an ir!
my knightly steadfastness toward her!

daz mac ze sælden komen mir.
that may to blisses come me.

Liep ichs vor allen dingen hân. 1620
Dear I-her before all things have.

wie diu vil guote sî getân?
how the very good-one be made?

si ist prûn, rôt, lieplîchen wîz:
she is brown, red, lovely white:

got hât mit wunsche sînen vlîz
God has with wish his diligence

an ir vil werden lîp geleit.
on her very worthy person laid.

si ist vor allem valsche meit:
she is from all falseness free:

ir hertze ir ie wan tugende riet.
her heart her ever but virtues counseled.

ich sanc ze dienst ir disiu liet:
I sang to service hers these songs:

XXXIX.

XXXIX.

Er ist komen wider mit gewalde,
He is come back with power,

den der meie het vertriben.
whom the May had driven-away.

Summerwunne ist im entrunnen balde:
Summer-delight is from-him escaped quickly:

der ist vor im niht beliben.
it is before him not remained.

Den sul wir ze mâzen klagen,
Him shall we in measure lament,

sît diu sunne
since the sun

uns des meien wunne
to-us of-the May's delight

wider gît in kurzen tagen.
back gives in short days.

Swem der winder hôchgemüete swendet,
Whom the winter high-spirit makes-vanish,

der muoz ofte trûric sîn.
he must often sad be.

Mir hât hôhen muot ein wîp gesendet:
Me has high spirit a woman sent:

dâ von ist daz herze mîn,
there from is the heart mine,

Swie ez witeret, vrô, vrô, vrô!
However it weathers, glad, glad, glad!

von ir güete
from her goodness

stîget mîn gemüete
climbs my mind

für die liehten sunnen hô.
before the bright sun high.

Schœne von ir güete ist mîn vrouwe,
Beautiful from her goodness is my lady,

sie ist von ir schœne guot.
she is from her beauty good.

Swanne ich in ir spilnden ougen schouwe
Whenever I in her sparkling eyes behold

mich, sô blüet mîn hôher muot,
me, so blooms my high spirit,

Reht als in des meien zît
Right as in the May's time

tuont die rôsen.
do the roses.

ir güetlîchez lôsen
her kindly flattering

mir vil hôhe freude gît.
to-me very high joy gives.

Ir vil lieplîch, güetlîch, lœslîch grüezen
Her very lovely, kindly, flattering greeting

tuot mir hôhe freude kunt.
makes me high joy known.

Süeziu wort diu kunnen süezlîch süezen
Sweet words they can sweetly sweeten

ir vil süezen rôten munt.
her very sweet red mouth.

Swaz ich munde hân gesehen
Whatever I of-mouths have seen

mîne stunde,
my hours,

sô muoz ich ir munde
so must I to-her mouth

für sie alle rœte jehen.
before them all redness declare.

Sie hât ir wîpheit vil wol behüetet
She has her womanhood very well guarded

vor unvrouwenlîcher tât.
from unladylike deed.

Wol ir, daz sie mir sô güetlîch güetet,
Well her, that she me so kindly treats-with-kindness,

dâ von mîn muot hôhe stât!
there from my spirit high stands!

Siest mir süezer, danne iht sî,
She-is to-me sweeter, than anything be,

in dem muote
in the spirit

liep vor allem guote:
dear before all goods:

sus ist ir mîn herze bî.
thus is to-her my heart by.

Wie sie sî gevar, diu wol gemuote,
How she be colored, the well spirited-one,

daz wil ich iuch wizzen lân:
that will I you know let:

Prûn, rôt, wîz ist diu vil reine, guote,
Brown, red, white is the very pure, good-one,

von den varwen sô getân,
from the colors so made,

Daz nie engel schœner wart
That never angel more-beautiful was

an ze schouwen.
on to look.

man muozs eine vrouwen
one must-her a lady

nennen von ir hôhen art.
name from her high kind.

Lieplîch priune, rôte rôsen rœte,
Lovely brownness, red roses' redness,

snêwes wîze hât ir lîp.
snow's whiteness has her person.

Ir gebærde ist mînes trûrens tœte:
Her bearing is of-my sadness killer:

siest von tugenden ein guot wîp.
she-is by virtues a good woman.

Ir lîp ist des herzen mîn
Her person is of-the heart mine

hœhstiu wunne.
highest delight.

mîner freuden sunne
of-my joys sun

ist ir rôt, wîz, prûner schîn.
is her red, white, brown shine.

1621 Gesungen wurden disiu liet
Sung were these songs

vil. mîn hertze mir dô riet
much. my heart me then counseled

singen aber niuwen sin.
sing again new sense.

ich gedâhte her, ich gedâhte hin:
I thought hither, I thought thither:

ich gedâht an der minnære klage,
I thought of the lovers' lament,

daz si klagent von dem tage,
that they lament of the day,

wie si der von hertzenliebe ie schiet.
how them it from heart's-love ever parted.

dâ von sang ich niuwiu liet.
there from sang I new songs.

1622 Ich gedâht: «mîn meister habent ê
I thought: «my masters have before

gesungen, daz die wahter wê
sung, that the watchmen woe

in mit wecken haben getân;
to-them with waking have done;

des ich doch niht gelouben kan.
which I yet not believe can.

ein hôchgeboren witzic wîp
a high-born wise woman

solde ungern eines gebûren lîp
should unwillingly a peasant's person

dekein ir heimlîch wizen lân:
any her secret know let:

und tæt siz, ez wære missetân.
and did she-it, it were misdone.

Man hât edeler wahter niht: 1623
One has noble watchmen not:

dâ von sô wær ez gar enwiht,
there from so were it wholly worthless,

der einem wahter iht des sagt,
who to-a watchman anything of-it tells,

daz im wær liep gar verdagt.
that to-him were dear wholly concealed.

gebûren art kan niht verdagen:
peasant's kind can not conceal:

des sol man in ungern sagen.
of-that shall one them unwillingly tell.

edeliu art kan swîgen wol;
noble kind can keep-silent well;

dâ von si heimlîch wizen sol.
there from she secret know shall.

Ob mir von vrowen liep geschiht, 1624
If to-me from ladies love happens,

des liez ich ungern wizzen iht
of-that let I unwillingly know anything

für wâr ein gebeurischen lîp,
for true a peasant-like person,

ez wær man oder wîp.
it were man or woman.

nu habt ez ûf die triwe mîn:
now have it on the faithfulness mine:

und müest ez iemen wizzend sîn,
and must it anyone knowing be,

der müest reineclîch geborn
he must purely born

sîn: des hât mîn lîp gesworn.
be: of-that has my person sworn.

1625 Man muoz von wârheit mir gestân,
One must by truth me grant,

daz deheinen wahter nieman lân
that any watchman no-one leave

sol lâzen wizzen heinlîch niht.
shall let know secret not.

swer sô ez tuot, ez ist enwiht,
whoever so it does, it is worthless,

sît ez muoz ein gebûre sîn.
since it must a peasant be.

sô habt daz ûf die triwe mîn,
so have that on the faithfulness mine,

daz einer werden vrowen maget
that a worthy lady's maiden

ir heinlîch verre baz verdaget.
her secret far better conceals.

1626 Ez müest ein armiu frowe sîn,
It must a poor lady be,

diu sorget ûf des morgens schîn,
who cares for the morning's shine,

diu niht gewinnen möht ein maget,
who not get might a maiden,

diu daz bewart, daz iht betaget
who that guards, that not dawns

ir vriunt bî ir, wær ez ir leit.
her friend by her, were it to-her sorrow.

ez würde ouch verre baz verdeit
it became also far better concealed

von ir diu heinlîch, dêst mir kunt,
by her the secret, that-is to-me known,

danne ob ez sünge des wahters munt.
than if it sang the watchman's mouth.

Man muoz ouch mir von wârheit jehen, 1627
One must also me by truth declare,

daz ez hie vor ist ouch geschehen,
that it here before is also happened,

daz eteswâ ein edel wîp
that somewhere a noble woman

betaget ist bî friundes lîp
dawned is by friend's person

unde doch verholn vil gar.
and yet secretly very wholly.

und wær man warden sîn gewar,
and were one become of-it aware,

er het vil übel lîht gevarn:
he had very ill easily fared:

daz muost er und ouch sî bebarn.
that must he and also she guard.

Swâ liep bî herzenliebe lît 1628
Wherever dear by heart's-love lies

verholn biz an des morgens zît,
secretly until to the morning's time,

dâ sî beschînet hôhe der tac,
where them shines-on high the day,

und er niht dannen komen mac,
and he not thence come may,

er müeze durch nôt aldâ bestân,
he must for need there stay,

und sî in bî ir verhelen kan,
and she him by her hide can,

und er den tac belîbet dâ:
and he the day remains there:

und ist dem wol? ich wæne wol: jâ.
and is to-him well? I think well: yes.

1629 Sît ich die wârheit sprechen sol,
Since I the truth speak shall,

sone tet nie niht sô rehte wol,
so did never anything so rightly well,

alsô dâ liep bî liebe lît.
as where dear by dear lies.

ez ist ein vreuden hôchgezît
it is a joy's high-feast

und aller wunne ein himelrîch.
and of-all delight a heaven's-kingdom.

den vreuden wart nie niht gelîch,
to-the joys was never anything like,

die liep bî hertzenliebe hât,
which dear by heart's-love has,

dâ liep mit liebe schône umbe gât.
where dear with dear beautifully about goes.

1630 Ez ist für wâr niht wan ein lîp,
It is for true nothing but one body,

dâ ein man und ouch ein wîp
where a man and also a woman

vor liebe werdent des enein,
from love become of-that one,

daz sich ir arme und ir bein
that themselves their arms and their legs

von hertzenliebe zesamne wept
from heart's-love together weave

und sich ietweders hertze hept
and itself each heart lifts

ze springen in des andern lîp:
to spring into the other's person:

dâ wol dir, man! dâ wol dir, wîp!
there well thee, man! there well thee, woman!

Dâ kunde in nimmer werden baz. 1631
There could to-them never become better.

sô sult ir ouch gelouben daz:
so shall you also believe that:

ir scheiden tuot in von hertzen wê,
their parting does them from heart woe,

vil wê, ie langer sô ie mê.
very woe, ever longer so ever more.

daz wê vert wider an die stat,
the woe goes back to the place,

dâ man die freude lâzen hât;
where one the joy left has;

sô liep zuo liebe kumt hin wider,
when dear to dear comes thither back,

dâ muoz daz wê sich legen nider.
there must the woe itself lay down.

Swer liep und leit versuochet hât, 1632
Whoever love and sorrow tested has,

ich weiz wol, daz mich der niht lât
I know well, that me be not lets

liegen, disem sî alsô:
lie, this be so:

leit tuot trûric, liep tuot vrô.
sorrow makes sad, love makes glad.

von disen dingen sang ich ê liet,
of these things sang I before songs,

als mir mîn senedez hertze riet,
as me my longing heart counseled,

in einer süezen tagewîse hô:
in a sweet dawn-tune high:

diu wort dar inne sprâchen sô:
the words there in spoke so:

XL.
XL.

Ein schœniu maget
A beautiful maiden

sprach: «vil liebiu vrouwe mîn,
spoke: «very dear lady mine,

Wol ûf! ez taget.
Well up! it dawns.

schouwet gegen dem vensterlîn,
look toward the little-window,

Wie der tac ûf gât. der wahter von der zinnen
How the day up goes. the watchman from the battlement

ist gegangen. iuwer vriunt sol hinnen:
is gone. your friend shall hence:

ich fürht, er sî ze lange hie.»
I fear, he be too long here.»

Diu frouwe guot
The lady good

siuft und kust ir lieben man.
sighs and kisses her dear man.

Der hôchgemuot
The high-spirited-one

sprach: «guot vrouwe wol getân,
spoke: «good lady well made,

Der tac ist hôch ûf: ich kan niht komen hinne.
The day is high up: I can not come hence.

maht du mich verbergen iender hinne?
mayest thou me bide anywhere within?

daz ist mîn rât und ouch mîn ger.»
that is my counsel and also my desire.»

«Und möht ich dich
«And might I thee

bergen in den ougen mîn,
hide in the eyes mine,

Friunt, daz tæt ich.
Friend, that did I.

des kan leider niht gesîn.
of-that can alas not be.

Wil du hie in dirre kemenâte belîben,
(If)-wilt thou here in this chamber remain,

disen tac mit freuden wol vertrîben,
this day with joys well pass,

dar inne ich dich wol verhil.»
there in I thee well hide.»

«Nu birge mich,
«Now hide me,

swie du wil, vil schœne wîp!
however thou wilt, very beautiful woman!

Doch sô, daz ich
Yet so, that I

sunder wer iht vliese den lîp.
without defense not lose the life.

Wirt mîn iemen inne, sô solt dû mich warnen.
(If)-becomes of-me anyone aware, so shalt thou me warn.

kum ich ze wer, ez muos sîn lîp erarnen,
(if)-come I to defense, it must-it his life pay-for,

der mich mit strîte niht verbirt.»
who me with strife not spares.»

Sus wart verspart
Thus was locked-up

der vil manlîch, hochgemuot
the very manly, high-spirited-one

Und wol bewart
And well guarded

von der reinen, süezen guot.
by the pure, sweet good-one.

Wie pflac sîn den tac diu süeze, minneclîche?
How tended him the day the sweet, lovely-one?

sô, daz er wart hôhes muotes rîche.
so, that he became of-high spirit rich.

sô kurzen tac gewan er nie.
so short day won he never.

Diu naht quam dô.
The night came then.

sâ huop sich der minne spil:
at-once raised itself the love's game:

Sus unde sô
Thus and so

wart von in getriutet vil.
was by them caressed much.

Ich wæn, ie wîp wurde baz mit liebem manne,
I think, ever woman became better with dear man,

danne ir was. owê dô muost er danne:
than to-her was. alas then must he thence:

dâ von huop grôzer jâmer sich.
there from raised great grief itself.

Urloup genomen
Leave taken

wart mit küssen an der stunt.
was with kissing at the hour.

Schier wider komen
Soon back come

bat in ir süezer, rôter munt.
bade him her sweet, red mouth.

Er sprach: «ich tuon: dû bist mîner freuden wunne,
He spoke: «I do: thou art of-my joys delight,

mînes herzen spilndiu meien sunne,
of-my heart sparkling May sun,

mîn freuden gebe, mîn sælden wer.»
my joys' giver, my bliss's guarantor.»

Diu tageliet maniger gern sanc: 1633
The dawn-songs many-a-one gladly sang:

ze mâzzen kurz, ze mâzen lanc
in measure short, in measure long

was diu wîse, daz ist alsô,
was the tune, that is so,

ze rehte nider unde hô.
by right low and high.

die sang ich bî des winders zît,
they sang I in the winter's time,

sô val walt und owe lît,
when pale wood and water-meadow lies,

und diu kleinen vogelîn
and the little little-birds

ir singen müezen lâzen sîn.
their singing must let be.

1634 Der winder kurtzlîch dâ verswant:
The winter shortly there vanished:

ein sumer kom uns alzehant,
a summer came to-us forthwith,

als er uns ie ze komen pflac:
as it to-us ever to come was-wont:

der brâht vil manigen schœnen tac.
it brought very many-a beautiful day.

do gedâht ich an die frowen mîn,
then thought I of the lady mine,

der ich wil immer diende sîn
whom I will ever serving be

mit rehten triwen sunder wanc
with right faithfulness without wavering

umbe ir vil süezen habedanc.
for her very sweet thanks.

1635 Ich gedâht sus von der frowen mîn,
I thought thus of the lady mine,

ob ich gesinde solde sîn
if I household should be

in ir vil reines hertzen grunt,
in her very pure heart's ground,

daz mir dâ würde diu freude kunt
that to-me there were the joy known

und alsô hôhiu werdicheit,
and so high worthiness,

des ich mües immer sîn gemeit
of-which I must ever be joyful

und immer mêr vil hôchgemuot:
and ever more very high-spirited:

der gedanc was mir an freuden guot.
the thought was to-me in joys good.

Ich gedâhte, daz ich in dem paradîs 1636
I thought, that I in the paradise

niht wolde sîn deheinen wîs
not would be in-any way

für ir hertze, dâ dâ lît
for her heart, where there lies

der tugende hort alle zît.
of-the virtues hoard all time.

ob ich dâ solt gesinde sîn,
if I there should household be,

als si ist in dem hertzen mîn,
as she is in the heart mine,

sô wære ich immer mêre vrô:
so were I ever more glad:

daz wolde got, und wær daz sô!
that would God, and were that so!

Si ist in mînem hertzen gar 1637
She is in my heart wholly

gewaltic frowe, swar ich var:
mighty lady, wherever I go:

dar inne sî gekrœnet gât.
there inside she crowned goes.

mîn stæte si her ûz niht enlât:
my steadfastness her hither out not lets:

jâ muoz si immer drinne sîn
yes must she ever therein be

für wâr gewaltic keiserîn.
for true mighty empress.

ich hân mit ir dâ freuden spil
I have with her there joys' game

mit gedanken, swie ich wil.
with thoughts, however I will.

1638 Mîn minnegernder hôher muot
My love-desiring high spirit

ir unde mir dâ sanfte tuot.
to-her and me there gently does.

er spilt mit uns dâ freuden spil,
it plays with us there joys' game,

sus unde sô, reht swie ich wil.
thus and so, right however I will.

er tuot mir dâ vil ofte wol;
it does me there very often well;

des ich im gerne danken sol.
for-that I it gladly thank shall.

er machet mir die wîle unlanc:
it makes me the while not-long:

diu liet ich wîlent dâ von sanc:
the songs I once there of sang:

XLI.
XLI.

Guot wîp, mîner freuden lêre,
Good woman, of-my joys teaching,

tugende rîche vrouwe mîn,
of-virtues rich lady mine,

Wizze, daz mich jâmert sêre
Know, that me longs sorely

in daz reine herze dîn.
into the pure heart thine.

Dâ solt dû mich hûsen in:
There shalt thou me house in:

in dem süezen paradîse ich gerne bin.
in the sweet paradise I gladly am.

Dâ hât inne guot gemüete
There has within good mind

mit der wîpheit freuden vil:
with the womanhood joys much:

Dîn vil hôch gelobte güete
Thy very highly praised goodness

spilt dâ êrenbernde spil
plays there honor-bearing game

Mit den tugenden alle zît.
With the virtues all time.

wol mich, wol, ob mir dîn güete hûs dâ gît!
well me, well, if me thy goodness house there gives!

Tuo ûf! ich klopf an mit worten.
Open up! I knock at with words.

lâ mich in: sô bistu guot.
let me in: so art-thou good.

Sliuz ûf schiere mir die porten!
Unlock up soon to-me the gates!

bî mir hie ist hôher muot,
by me here is high spirit,

Der ouch gerne dienet dir:
Who also gladly serves thee:

erst dir holt mit triuwen, daz geloube mir.
he-is to-thee devoted with faithfulness, that believe me.

Er hât sîn vil wol genozzen,
He has of-it very well profited,

daz er dir ist alsô holt:
that he to-thee is so devoted:

Ich hân in zuo dir geslozzen
I have him to thee locked

in mîn herze, dâ er dolt
in my heart, where he suffers

Wunnebernder freuden vil.
Delight-bearing joys much.

er tuot dir dâ, liebiu frouwe, swaz er wil.
he does to-thee there, dear lady, whatever he will.

Hôher muot gewan mit wîbe
High spirit won with woman

nie sô manege freude grôz.
never so many joys great.

Ich hân in bî dînem lîbe
I have him by thy person

ofte funden decke blôz.
often found cover bare.

Dâ kust er wol tûsent stunt
There kissed he well thousand times

dînen kleinvelhitzerôten, süezen munt.
thy small-skinned-hot-red, sweet mouth.

Güetlîch triuten, küssen suoze,
Kindly caressing, kissing sweetly,

drucken brust an brüstelîn,
pressing breast to little-breast,

Dise liebe, süeze unmuoze
This dear, sweet busyness

trîbet in dem herzen mîn
drives in the heart mine

Mit dir, reiniu frouwe guot,
With thee, pure lady good,

dîn guot vriunt, mîn minnegernder hôher muot.
thy good friend, my love-desiring high spirit.

Als er im ein freude tihtet
When he for-himself a joy composes

in dem herzen mîn mit dir,
in the heart mine with thee,

Arme und bein er danne flihtet,
Arms and legs he then braids,

im und dir, dir unde mir,
him and thee, thee and me,

Hin und her, sus unde sô:
Thither and hither, thus and so:

daz tuot herzenlîchen wol und machet vrô.
that does heartily good and makes glad.

X · THE LADY'S WORD

Ulrich vows that his lady's person is dearer to him than any other and sings Song XLII. Her laughing mouth and eyes lift his spirit, and he sings Song XLIII. When she speaks one sweet word to him, it goes down into his heart and drives his sorrow away, and he sings Song XLIV. Then comes the day he will always hate, when Duke Frederick of Austria is slain.

Nâch disen lieden gedâht mîn lîp 1639
After these songs thought my person

an daz vil reine, süeze wîp,
of the very pure, sweet woman,

der ich mit triwen nie vergaz,
whom I with faithfulness never forgot,

wan mir nie wîp geviele baz.
for me never woman pleased better.

ich meine die lieben frowen mîn,
I mean the dear lady mine,

der ritter ich sol immer sîn
whose knight I shall ever be
und ir getriwer dienestman,
and her faithful vassal,
die wîle ich leben und guot hân.
the while I life and goods have.

1640 Nie naht ich sô wol gelac,
Never night I so well lay,
mir geschein noch nie sô lieber tac;
to-me shone yet never so dear day;
ich wunschte der lieben frowen mîn,
I wished to-the dear lady mine,
daz si immer sælic müeze sîn!
that she ever blessed may be!
si hât mich in die stæte brâht,
she has me into the steadfastness brought,
ez sî tac oder ez sî naht,
it be day or it be night,
daz ich ir vergizze niht:
that I her forget not:
mîn hertze ir wan ze frowen giht.
my heart her but as lady declares.

1641 Mir ist für wâr ir süezer lîp
To-me is for true her sweet person
von hertzen liep für elliu wîp
from heart dear before all women
und lieber, danne iht dinges sî.
and dearer, than any thing be.
ich bin gein ir gar wankes vrî.
I am toward her wholly of-wavering free.

sô hât ouch daz vil reine wîp
so has also the very pure woman
von hertzen liep ir süezen lîp.
from heart dear her sweet person.
der selbe lîp ist vil liep mir:
the same person is very dear to-me:
ich weiz ouch wol, er ist liep ir.
I know also well, it is dear to-her.

Ir lîp der ist uns beiden gar 1642
Her person it is to-us both wholly
von hertzen liep: daz ist gar wâr.
from heart dear: that is wholly true.
sô liebes ich nie niht gewan
so dear I never anything won
noch nimmer mêr gewinnen kan
nor ever more win can
alsô ir lîp. des setz ich pfant
as her person. of-that set I pledge
gein got mîn sælde hie alzehant,
toward God my bliss here forthwith,
sô daz ich nimmer wol gevar:
so that I never well fare:
si ist mir liep von hertzen gar.
she is to-me dear from heart wholly.

Daz mîn lîp ir herze treit, 1643
That my person her heart bears,
des wil ich immer sîn gemeit;
of-that will I ever be joyful;
und daz daz hertze gît ir rât,
and that the heart gives her counsel,

dâ von si manige tugende hât,
there from she many virtues has,

des muoz ir hertze unde ir lîp
of-that must her heart and her person

von wârheit sîn niht wan ein wîp,
by truth be nothing but one woman,

der ir hertze ie tugende riet:
to-whom her heart ever virtues counseled:

dâ von sang ich disiu liet:
there from sang I these songs:

XLII.

XLII.

Vrouwe mîn, got gebe dir guoten morgen,
Lady mine, God give thee good morning,

guoten tac, vil freude rîche naht!
good day, very of-joy rich night!

Got behüete dich vor al den sorgen,
God guard thee from all the sorrows,

dâ von dîn lîp werde in trûren brâht!
there from thy person be into sadness brought!

Bistu vrô, sô bin ich hôhes muotes.
Art-thou glad, so am I of-high spirit.

mirst ze hôhem muote niht sô guotes,
to-me-is to high spirit nothing so good,

sô daz dû sîst herzenlîchen vrô.
as that thou be heartily glad.

Dû hâst ein liep liep vor allen dingen:
Thou hast a dear-one dear before all things:

daz ist mir als herzenliep sô dir:
that is to-me as heart-dear as to-thee:

Nâch des hulden wil ich immer ringen.
After whose favor will I ever strive.

nie niht wart sô rehte liebes mir
never anything was so rightly dear to-me

Sô dîn lîp: des bringe ich dich wol inne.
As thy person: of-that bring I thee well aware.

vrouwe, mînes herzen küneginne,
lady, of-my heart queen,

tuot mir dîn lîp wol, sô bistu guot.
(if)-does me thy person good, so art-thou good.

Liebiu vrouwe, liebest aller wîbe,
Dear lady, dearest of-all women,

dîn lîp ist mir in dem herzen mîn:
thy person is to-me in the heart mine:

sô ist dîn reinez herze in sînem lîbe:
so is thy pure heart in its person:

welhem sol ez denne nâher sîn?
to-which shall it then nearer be?

des kan ich vor liebe niht bescheiden.
of-that can I for love not decide.

ez ist uns sô rehte nâhen beiden,
it is to-us so rightly near both,

daz sîn unser twederz nie vergaz.
that of-it of-us either never forgot.

Lieb vor allem liebe sô ist dir, vrouwe,
Dear before all dear so is to-thee, lady,

dîn vil süezer, minneclîcher lîp.
thy very sweet, lovely person.

an dem selben lîbe ich mîn liep schouwe:
in the same person I my dear-one behold:

daz bist dû, vil reine, sælic wîp.
that art thou, very pure, blessed woman.

mîn lîp treit dîn herze, daz er lêret
my person bears thy heart, which it teaches

tugende vil: des sît ir beidiu gêret.
virtues many: of-that are you both honored.

wol mich des, daz ich iu dienen sol!
well me of-that, that I you serve shall!

Guot wîp, ich wil dienen ritterlîche
Good woman, I will serve knightly

dir ûf den vil herzenlieben wân,
thee on the very heart-dear hope,

daz ich kome noch in daz himelrîche,
that I come yet into the heaven's-kingdom,

dâ nie mannes lîp wart in verlân.
where never man's person was in let.

dêst dîn herze, dâ dîn tugende, vrouwe,
that-is thy heart, where thy virtues, lady,

wahsent inne ûz der güete touwe.
grow within from the goodness's dew.

lâ mich dar: ich tuon dir sanfte dâ.
let me thither: I do thee gently there.

Diu liet die wîsen dûhten guot: 1644
The songs the tunes seemed good:

diu riet ze singen hôher muot
them counseled to sing high spirit

mir von der lieben vrowen mîn.
me of the dear lady mine.

diu lât mich selten trûric sîn:
who lets me seldom sad be:

ez witer sus, ez witer sô,
it weathers thus, it weathers so,

si tuot mich ze allen zîten vrô.
she makes me at all times glad.

sî ist schœne, sî ist guot:
she is beautiful, she is good:

ir güete gibt mir hôhen muot.
her goodness gives me high spirit.

Ich bin vrô in des hertzen grunt, 1645
I am glad in the heart's ground,

sô mich an lachet ir rôter munt.
when me at laughs her red mouth.

ir sult für wâr gelouben daz:
you shall for true believe that:

mîniu ougen touwes naz
my eyes of-dew wet

werdent an der selben stunt,
become at the same hour,

sô mich an lachet ir rôter munt.
when me at laughs her red mouth.

sô ist mir in dem hertzen sô,
so is to-me in the heart so,

sam ez welle in die lüfte hô.
as it would into the airs high.

1646 Ir kuslîch munt sô lachen kan,
Her kissable mouth so laugh can,

swenne er mich güetlîch lachet an,
whenever it me kindly laughs at,

daz sâ ûf stîget mir der muot,
that at-once up climbs to-me the spirit,

rehte als diu liehte sunne tuot,
right as the bright sun does,

sô si ûf den bergen gât.
when she up the mountains goes.

mîn lîp vil hôhe freude hât,
my person very high joy has,

sô mir ir kleinvelrôter munt
when me her small-skinned-red mouth

sîn güetlîch lachen machet kunt.
its kindly laughing makes known.

1647 Ir ougen habent einen sit,
Her eyes have a custom,

daz sî ir munde lachent mit.
that they her mouth laugh with.

ir lachen in sô schône stât,
her laughing them so beautifully becomes,

swelhe man iht ungemüetes hât,
whatever man anything of-ill-humor has,

ob den ir ougen lachent an,
if him her eyes laugh at,

daz al sîn trûren muoz cergân,
that all his sadness must pass,

und muoz ouch immer wesen vrô:
and must also ever be glad:

ir ougen künnen lachen sô.
her eyes can laugh so.

Mîner freuden spiegel gar 1648
Of-my joys mirror wholly

ist ir lîp der vil wol gevar.
is her person the very well colored.

solde ich den spiegel ofte sehen,
should I the mirror often see,

sone kunde mir nimmer baz geschehen.
so could to-me never better happen.

sô mir ir ougen unde ir munt
when me her eyes and her mouth

ir süezzez lachen machent kunt,
their sweet laughing make known,

sô wird ich alles trûrens vrî,
so become I of-all sadness free,

und ist mir hôhiu freude bî.
and is to-me high joy by.

Ir sult für wâr daz ûf mir hân: 1649
You shall for true that on me have:

ich gesach nie niht sô gern an
I saw never anything so gladly at

als ir vil minneclîchen lîp.
as her very lovely person.

si reine, süezze, sælic wîp,
she pure, sweet, blessed woman,

si frowe ob al den freuden mîn,
she lady above all the joys mine,

ich wil ir immer dienende sîn
I will her ever serving be

mit rehten triuwen sunder wanc.
with right faithfulness without wavering.

diu liet ich ir ze dienest sanc:
the songs I her to service sang:

XLIII.

XLIII.

Wunneclîchen hôhe mîn gemüete
Delightfully high my mind

stât. des habe mîn frouwe danc,
stands. of-that have my lady thanks,

Diu mir mit ir manicvalten güete
Who me with her manifold goodness

mînen muot ie hôhe twanc.
my spirit ever high compelled.

Diu vil reine, süeze tuot mir sô,
The very pure, sweet-one does to-me so,

daz ich bin in aller zît von herzen vrô.
that I am in all time from heart glad.

Diu vil guote zweier hande lachen
The very good-one of-two kinds laughing

lachet, diu ich nennen wil:
laughs, which I name will:

Diu kann sie sô minneclîchen machen,
Those can she so lovely make,

daz sie sint mîn herzen spil.
that they are my heart's game.

Sô ich ir süeze lachen einez sol
When I her sweet laughing one shall

sehen, sô ist mir in dem herzen wol, wol, wol!
see, so is to-me in the heart well, well, well!

Einez sie mit rôsenvarwem munde
One she with rose-colored mouth

kan: daz ist sô minneclîch,
can: that is so lovely,

Daz ein man dar inne freude funde,
That a man there in joy found,

der ê nie wart freuden rîch.
who before never became of-joys rich.

Siest der minnegernden meienzît:
She-is to-the love-desiring-ones' May-time:

in ir lachen freuden hort der süeze lît.
in her laughing joys' hoard the sweet lies.

Lachen kan mîn tugentrîchiu frouwe
Laugh can my virtue-rich lady

mit ir spilnden ougen sô,
with her sparkling eyes so,

Swanne ich mich dar inne rehte schouwe,
Whenever I myself there in rightly behold,

daz ich bin von herzen frô.
that I am from heart glad.

Swen ir ougen güetlîch lachent an,
Whom her eyes kindly laugh at,

der muoz immer sîn ein vreudenrîcher man.
he must ever be a joy-rich man.

Mit ir spilnden ougen lachen schône
With her sparkling eyes laugh beautifully

kan diu reine, süeze wol.
can the pure, sweet-one well.

Des trag ich der hôhen freuden krône,
Of-that bear I the high joys' crown,

als ir ougen touwes vol
when her eyes of-dew full

Werdent ûz ir reines herzen grunt
Become out-of her pure heart's ground

von ir lachen: sâ sô wirde ich minnewunt.
from her laughing: at-once so become I love-wounded.

Ir vil kleinvelwîzer hals, ir kinne,
Her very small-skinned-white neck, her chin,

munt, brâ, wängel, ougen lieht
mouth, brows, little-cheeks, eyes bright

Ist der minnen spiegel, dâ man inne
Is the love's mirror, where one within

manger hande wunne siht.
many kinds delight sees.

Solde ich in den süezen spiegel sehen
Should I into the sweet mirror see

alle zît, mir kunde nimmer baz geschehen.
all time, to-me could never better happen.

Wolde got, sold ich ir hals, ir ougen,
Would God, should I her neck, her eyes,

brüstel, kinne, wängel, munt
little-breasts, chin, little-cheeks, mouth

Mit ir guotem willen küssen tougen
With her good will kiss secretly

hundert tûsent, tûsent stunt!
hundred thousand, thousand times!

Maneger giht, des wær mir alze vil,
Many-a-one declares, of-that were to-me all-too much,

der mit wîben niht kan spiln der minne spil.
who with women not can play the love's game.

Nâch disen lieden wart ich vrô: 1650
After these songs became I glad:

mîn muot begunde stîgen hô.
my spirit began to-climb high.

ich gedâht: «ez mac ein edel wîp
I thought: «it may a noble woman

erwerben biderbes ritters lîp:
win worthy knight's person:

des hôrt ich ie die wîsen jehen.
of-that heard I ever the wise declare.

daz selbe möht ouch mir geschehen,
the same might also to-me happen,

daz ich erwürbe die vrowen mîn:
that I won the lady mine:

des müest ich hôhes muotes sîn
of-that must I of-high spirit be

Und immer mêre von hertzen vrô. 1651
And ever more from heart glad.

daz wolde got, und kœmez sô,
that would God, and came-it so,

daz ich ir gelæge bî!
that I her lay by!

sô wære ich immer trûrens vrî
so were I ever of-sadness free

und wære mir baz danne wol.
and were to-me better than well.

dar nâch ich immer dienen sol
there after I ever serve shall

mit rehten triwen mîne tage,
with right faithfulness my days,

daz ich ir hertzen gunst bejage.
that I her heart's favor win.

1652 Ich weiz wol, daz ein werder man,
I know well, that a worthy man,

der ritterlîchen dienen kan,
who knightly serve can,

daz dem ouch mag gelingen wol,
that to-him also may succeed well,

ob er ir dienet, als er sol,
if he her serves, as he shall,

mit rehten triuwen sunder wanc
with right faithfulness without wavering

umb ir vil süezen habedanc.
for her very sweet thanks.

er mac ir minne wol bejagen,
he may her love well win,

wil er gegen ir triwe tragen.»
(if)-will he toward her faithfulness bear.»

1653 Ein lieplîch liep mir dô geschach,
A lovely joy to-me then happened,

daz ich mîner frowen sach
that I my lady saw

in ir ougen ze einer stunt.
in her eyes at one hour.

dô sprach ir rôsenvarber munt
then spoke her rose-colored mouth

wider mich ein süezez wort:
to me a sweet word:

daz ist gar mîner sælden hort
that is wholly of-my bliss hoard

immer, al die wîle ich lebe,
ever, all the while I live,

ez ist gar mîner sælden gebe.
it is wholly of-my bliss giver.

Daz selbe wort tet mir sô wol, 1654
The same word did me so good,

daz ich sîn noch bin freuden vol
that I of-it still am of-joys full

und in dem hertzen hôch gemuot:
and in the heart high spirited:

ez ist mir noch für trûren guot.
it is to-me still for sadness good.

mîn munt von wârheit iu des giht:
my mouth by truth you of-that declares:

mich lât daz wort noch trûren niht;
me lets the word still sorrow not;

ich wil michs immer freunde sîn
I will myself-of-it ever rejoicing be

für wâr gar in dem hertzen mîn.
for true wholly in the heart mine.

Dô sî daz wort von munde lie, 1655
When she the word from mouth let,

zehant ez süezlîchen gie
forthwith it sweetly went

zetal in mînes hertzen grunt.
downward into my heart's ground.

dô tet ez mir die freude kunt,
then made it me the joy known,

diu mir verswindet nimmer mê.
which to-me vanishes never more.

ez vertreip mir dâ vil gar mîn wê
it drove-away to-me there very wholly my woe

und hiez mich hôhes muotes sîn:
and bade me of-high spirit be:

ditz gebôt ez von der vrowen mîn.
this commanded it from the lady mine.

1656 Ez sprach: «du maht wol wesen vrô.
It spoke: «thou mayest well be glad.

sît mich mîn vrowe zuo dir sô
since me my lady to thee so

ûz ir munde hât gesant,
out-of her mouth has sent,

sô tuon ich dir die freude bekant,
so make I thee the joy known,

der dû bist immer hôchgemuot.
of-which thou art ever high-spirited.

ich wil dir sîn für trûren guot
I will to-thee be for sadness good

immer in dem hertzen dîn:
ever in the heart thine:

daz schuof mit mir diu vrowe mîn.»
that ordered with me the lady mine.»

1657 Ich sprach: «nu wis mir willekomen!
I spoke: «now be to-me welcome!

sô gern ich nie niht hân vernomen
so gladly I never anything have heard

als dich, vil minneclîchez wort.
as thee, very lovely word.

du bist gar mîner sælden hort
thou art wholly of-my bliss hoard

und bist gar mîner freuden trôst.
and art wholly of-my joys comfort.

du hâst von trûren mich erlôst
thou hast from sadness me released

und hâst mir hôhen muot gegeben.
and hast me high spirit given.

von dir muoz ich mit freuden leben.
by thee must I with joys live.

Du bist ein wort sô süeze gar, 1658
Thou art a word so sweet wholly,

swar ich kêre und swar ich var,
wherever I turn and wherever I go,

sô mag ich dîn vergezen niht:
so may I thee forget not:

vil liebes mir von dir geschiht.
very dear to-me from thee happens.

des muostu in dem hertzen mîn
of-that must-thou in the heart mine

immer mêr verslozzen sîn.
ever more locked be.

diu liebe mînem hertzen riet
the love to-my heart counseled

von dir ze singen disiu liet:»
of thee to sing these songs:»

XLIV.
XLIV.

Ich bin hôhes muotes:
I am of-high spirit:

hôher muot mir sanfte tuot.
high spirit me gently does.

Nie niht wart sô guotes
Never anything was so good

sô mit zühten hôher muot.
as with courtesies high spirit.

Hôch geboren schœne wîp
High born beautiful woman

mac vil wol erwerben hôchgemuotes ritters lîp.
may very well win high-spirited knight's person.

Ein wîp mich behüetet
A woman me guarded

hât vor trûren mîne zît.
has from sadness my time.

Güetlîch sie mir güetet:
Kindly she to-me treats-with-kindness:

an ir al mîn freude lît.
on her all my joy lies.

Ich bin durch sie hôchgemuot.
I am for her high-spirited.

sô ist diu vil schœne von ir hôhen tugenden guot.
so is the very beautiful-one from her high virtues good.

Mit rôtsüezem munde
With red-sweet mouth

sprach diu guote wider mich
spoke the good-one to me

Ein wort zeiner stunde,
A word at-one hour,

des muoz mîn lîp freuwen sich.
of-that must my person rejoice itself.

Smielend ir munt daz wort sprach,
Smiling her mouth the word spoke,

dô ich in ir liehten, spilenden, süezen ougen sach.
when I in her bright, sparkling, sweet eyes looked.

Ir guot wîplîch güete
Her good womanly goodness

nam ez ûz ir herzen grunt.
took it out-of her heart's ground.

Vreuden hôchgemüete
Joys' high-spirit

blüet mir an der selben stunt,
blooms to-me at the same hour,

Dô sie sprach daz süeze wort,
When she spoke the sweet word,

daz ich immer hân für mîner hôhen freuden hort.
which I ever have for my high joys' hoard.

Mit ir worten süezen
With her words sweet

machet sie mich hôchgemuot.
makes she me high-spirited.

Ir urloup, ir grüezen
Her leave, her greeting

mir von schulden sanfte tuot.
me by rights gently does.

Ich bin alles des gewert
I am all of-that granted

mit der tugende rîchen, des mîn lîp ze freuden gert.
by the of-virtues rich, of-which my person for joys desires.

Ich hân von ir êre,
I have from her honor,

ich hân von ir hôhen muot.
I have from her high spirit.

Dannoch hân ich mêre
Besides have I more

von ir, daz mir sanfte tuot:
from her, which me gently does:

Vreude, wunne, ritters leben,
Joy, delight, knight's life,

daz hât sie ze lône mir umb mînen dienst gegeben.
that has she as reward me for my service given.

Ich hân von der guoten
I have from the good-one

lîp, guot, êre gernden sin.
body, goods, honor desiring mind.

Der vil wol gemuoten
Of-the very well spirited-one

ritter ich mit triuwen bin.
knight I with faithfulness am.

Swaz sie wil, daz wil ouch ich:
Whatever she will, that will also I:

siest gewaltic küneginne immer über mich,
she-is mighty queen ever over me,

Nâch disen lieden kom ein tac,
After these songs came a day,

den ich wol immer hazzen mac
which I well ever hate may

und der mir ofte noch trûren gît.
and which me often yet sadness gives.

uns kom ein swindiu sumerzît,
to-us came a cruel summertime,

dar inne der fürste Friderîch,
there in the prince Frederick,

der hôch geborn von Œsterrîch,
the high born of Austria,

vil jæmerlîchen wart erslagen:
very wretchedly was slain:

den muoz mîn lîp wol immer klagen
him must my person well ever lament

Und sîn ouch immer jâmeric sîn. 1660
And of-him also ever grieving be.

er was der rehte herre mîn,
he was the right lord mine,

und ich sîn rehter dienestman.
and I his right vassal.

verklagen ich in nimmer kan.
lament-enough I him never can.

an im vil hôher tugende lac:
in him very high virtue lay:

der biderben er vil schône pflac
the worthy-ones he very beautifully tended

und teilt in mit oft sîn guot:
and shared them with often his goods:

er was vil fürstenlîch gemuot.
he was very princely spirited.

XI · THE DEATH OF DUKE FREDERICK

On Saint Vitus's day Duke Frederick meets the king of Hungary at the Leitha, and while he exhorts his men, the Russians' troop falls on him from behind. Heinrich of Liechtenstein wins the field, but the duke's scribe finds him dead, with a single wound, and he is buried at Heiligenkreuz. Robbery spreads through Styria and Austria, and Ulrich condemns the robber lords and urges the young nobles to joy, singing Song XLV against the cheerless.

Owê des, ich muoz iu sagen, 1661
Alas of-that, I must you tell,

wie jæmerlîch er wart erslagen,
how wretchedly he was slain,

den ich von hertzen immer klage:
whom I from heart ever lament:

ez geschach reht an sant Vîtes tage.
it happened right on Saint Vitus's day.

der fürste lac mit schœnem her
the prince lay with beautiful army

dem lande sîn vil schône ze wer
for-the land his very beautifully in defense

gegen dem künige von Ungerlant:
against the king of Hungary:

der het ouch wîten sich besant.
he had also widely himself summoned.

1662 An sante Vîtes tage vruo
On Saint Vitus's day early

der künic mit scharen zogte zuo.
the king with troops drew to.

er zogt zuo uns ûf einen strît:
he drew to us on a battle:

des gerouwe in und di sînen sît.
of-that rued him and the his since.

er zogt zuo uns an die Leittâ.
he drew to us at the Leitha.

dô schart ouch sich vil schône sâ
then formed-troops also himself very beautifully at-once

der hôch gemuote Friderîch,
the high spirited Frederick,

der fürste wert ûz Œsterrîch.
the prince worthy out-of Austria.

1663 Den strît tihte ich iu gern gar,
The battle compose I you gladly wholly,

wie dâ bestuont diu schar di schar,
how there attacked the troop the troop,

und wie man kom über die Leittâ,
and how one came over the Leitha,

und wie ez di biderben tâten dâ,
and how it the worthy-ones did there,

und wie der und der wart erslagen;
and how this-one and that-one was slain;

wan daz ichz dar umbe wil verdagen:
but that I-it there for will conceal:

ez ist getihtet ê vor mir,
it is composed already before me,

dâ von ich der niwe wol enbir,
there from I it anew well forgo,

Und wilz iu gar kurzlîchen sagen, 1664
And will-it you wholly briefly tell,

wie dâ der fürst wart erslagen:
how there the prince was slain:

der Reuzzen schar huop dâ den strît.
the Russians' troop raised there the battle.

gein den kom schône an der zît
toward them came beautifully at the time

mit einer schar mîn her Heinrîch
with a troop my sir Heinrich

von Liehtenstein, der muotes rîch:
of Liechtenstein, the of-spirit rich:

er fuort den vanen in sîner hant.
he carried the standard in his hand.

zwischen die zwô schar kom gerant
between the two troops came running

1665 Der werde fürste Friderîch:
The worthy prince Frederick:

er mant di sînen ritterlîch;
he urged the his knightly;

er sprach: «nu strîtet hiute wol!
he spoke: «now fight today well!

drumbe ich iuch alle rîchen sol.
for-it I you all enrich shall.

ich wil iu nimmer niht versagen
I will you never anything refuse

für wâr bî allen mînen tagen.
for true by all my days.

swes iwer deheiner an mich gert,
whatever of-you any of me desires,

des sol er alles sîn gewert.»
of-that shall he all be granted.»

1666 Owê des, daz dâ geschach!
Alas of-that, which there happened!

der fürste leider übersach,
the prince alas overlooked,

daz dar gesprangte der Reuzzen schar
that thither galloped the Russians' troop

(daz übersach er leider gar),
(that overlooked he alas wholly),

die wîle er hie di sînen mant.
the while he here the his urged.

der Reuzzen schar dô kom gerant
the Russians' troop then came running

hinden ûf den fürsten rîch:
behind on the prince mighty:

dâ von gelac er jæmerlîch.
there from lay he wretchedly.

Der strît zesamne schôn kom sâ. 1667
The battle together beautifully came at-once.

dô weste ouch niemen, daz lac dâ
then knew also no-one, that lay there

des strîtes herre ze einer sît.
of-the battle lord at one side.

ûf dem stuont vast enstet der strît:
on him stood fast in-place the battle:

owê, owê der grôzen nôt!
alas, alas the great distress!

dâ gelac der fürste tôt.
there lay the prince dead.

den vant sît ligende jæmerlich
him found since lying wretchedly

sîn schrîber, der hiez her Heinrîch.
his scribe, who was-called sir Heinrich.

Der strît ûf im vast gienc entwer, 1668
The battle over him fast went across,

iezuo hin und iezuo her.
now thither and now hither.

den sic iedoch aldâ gewan
the victory yet there won

von Liehtenstein der biderbe man.
of Liechtenstein the worthy man.

der gebârt dâ ungelîch einem zagen.
he bore-himself there unlike a coward.

bî im vil leute wart erslagen.
by him very-many people were slain.

die Reuzzen muosten wîchen dâ:
the Russians must yield there:

si huoben sich ze flühte sâ.
they raised themselves to flight at-once.

1669 Der schrîber Heinrîch alzehant
The scribe Heinrich forthwith
den rîchen fürsten ligende vant.
the mighty prince lying found.
er vant in ligent jæmerlîch:
he found him lying wretchedly:
ez het der edele fürste rîch
it had the noble prince mighty
an im niht wan ein spaldenier
on him nothing but a shoulder-guard
und einen schuoch, geloubet mir,
and one shoe, believe me,
und niht wan sîn lînîn kleit.
and nothing but his linen clothing.
daz müeze got immer sîn gekleit,
that may God ever be lamented,

1670 Daz man in alsô ligent vant,
That one him so lying found,
der herre was über manic lant!
who lord was over many-a land!
er het niht wunden niwan ein
he had no wounds but one
in sîn wange, und daz sîn bein
in his cheek, and that his leg
erswarzet was von einem trit.
blackened was from a kick.
dâ muost sîn ungelücke mit,
there must his misfortune with,
daz dâ von ie den tôt gewan
that there from ever the death won
ein alsô gar volkomen man.
a so wholly perfect man.

Der schrîber in sus ligende vant. 1671
The scribe him thus lying found.

der legt in ûf ein pfert zehant,
he laid him on a horse forthwith,

dar ûffe er jæmerlîchen lac,
there upon he wretchedly lay,

twerhes drüber als ein sac.
crosswise thereover like a sack.

einen mandel warf er über in.
a mantle cast he over him.

sus fuort ern in die stat hin:
thus led he-him into the town thither:

dâ bekant weder man noch wîp
there knew neither man nor woman

des hôchgebornen fürsten lîp.
the high-born prince's person.

In eines burgæres hûs geleit 1672
In a burgher's house laid

wart der fürst swachlîch gekleit.
was the prince poorly clad.

verholn man in ze kirchen truoc:
secretly one him to church bore:

dâ lac er ouch swachlîch genuoc.
there lay he also poorly enough.

dô er sus armer hie gelac,
when he thus poor here lay,

ûf dem velde vil manic slac
on the field very many-a blow

wart ze dienest im geslagen:
was to service to-him struck:

daz müezen noch die Unger klagen.
that must still the Hungarians lament.

1673 Der strît wart ritterlîch gestriten,
The battle was knightly fought,

der Unger nider vil geriten.
of-the Hungarians down many ridden.

die muosten vliehen sunder danc:
they must flee without consent:

manic biderbe ritter sî des twanc.
many-a worthy knight them of-that compelled.

ûf der jagat wart geseit
on the chase was told

daz bœse, swinde, swerende leit,
the evil, fierce, grievous sorrow,

daz der fürste wære erslagen:
that the prince were slain:

dâ huop sich weinen unde klagen.
there raised itself weeping and lamenting.

1674 Swem dâ daz mære wart geseit,
To-whomever there the tidings was told,

des lîp dâ fürbaz niht enreit.
whose person there further not rode.

des kom der Unger maniger hin:
of-that came of-the Hungarians many-a-one thither:

ze fliehen stuont gar al ir sin.
to flee stood wholly all their mind.

dâ wære gelegen maniger tôt,
there were lain many-a-one dead,

wan durch di swinde, klagende nôt.
but for the fierce, lamenting distress.

di klagenden jagten dâ niht mê:
the lamenting-ones hunted there not more:

in tet ir herren sterben wê.
to-them did their lord's dying woe.

Ir sült für wâr gelouben daz: 1675
You shall for true believe that:

dâ wart manic ritters ouge naz.
there was many-a knight's eye wet.

dâ man den fürsten tôten sach,
when one the prince dead saw,

daz hâr dâ maniger vast ûz brach.
the hair there many-a-one fast out broke.

der klagte sus, der klagte sô:
this-one lamented thus, that-one lamented so:

wir wâren alle von rehte unvrô,
we were all by right unglad,

wan uns ez ein werndez leit gebôt:
for to-us it a lasting sorrow commanded:

uns lac ein biderber herre tôt.
to-us lay a worthy lord dead.

Er wart von schulden vil gekleit. 1676
He was by rights much lamented.

ze dem heiligen Kreutze wart er geleit,
at the Holy Cross was he laid,

bestatet wol nâch fürsten sit.
buried well after prince's custom.

nu bit ich des, daz man in bit,
now bid I of-that, that one him bid,

der elliu dinc beschaffen hât,
who all things created has,

daz im der sêle werde rât,
that to-him of-the soul become remedy,

und daz er im genædic sî
and that he to-him gracious be

durch di sînen namen drî.
for the his names three.

1677 Got müeze sîn pflegen: er ist nu tôt.
God may of-him take-care: he is now dead.

sich huop nâch im vil grôziu nôt
itself raised after him very great distress

ze Stîre und ouch ze Œsterrîch.
in Styria and also in Austria.

da wart maniger arm, der ê was rîch.
there became many-a-one poor, who before was rich.

für wâr ich iu daz sagen wil:
for true I you that tell will:

nâch im geschach unbildes vil:
after him happened of-wrong much:

man raubt diu lant naht unde tac;
one robbed the lands night and day;

dâ von vil dörffer wüeste lac.
there from very-many villages waste lay.

1678 Die rîchen wurden sô gemuot,
The rich-ones became so spirited,

daz sî den armen nâmen ir guot.
that they from-the poor took their goods.

daz was iedoch ein swachez leben:
that was yet a base life:

den got het guotes vil gegeben,
to-whom God had of-goods much given,

daz die den armen tâten leit,
that they to-the poor did sorrow,

dâ mit si swanden werdicheit.
there with they made-vanish worthiness.

swen sô die armen erbarment niht,
whom so the poor pity not,

daz ist hie und ouch dort enwiht.
he is here and also there worthless.

Swâ sô der edel rîche man 1679
Wherever so the noble rich man

sich nimt sô grôze untugende an,
himself takes so great vice on,

daz sîn lîp ze einem rouber wirt,
that his person to a robber becomes,

ich weiz wol, daz in gar verbirt
I know well, that him wholly forgoes

gotes hulde und vrowen gunst.
God's favor and ladies' favor.

ez ist ein bœsiu herren kunst,
it is an evil lords' skill,

der sich an nimt sô swache sit,
who himself on takes so base custom,

dâ man die galgen dienet mit.
where one the gallows earns with.

Swâ sô der edel daz begât, 1680
Wherever so the noble-one that commits,

des ein unedeler laster hât,
of-which an ignoble-one disgrace has,

dâ ist diu edele gar verlorn:
there is the nobility wholly lost:

der wære bezzer ungeborn.
he were better unborn.

swâ sich diu hôchgeborniu art
wherever itself the high-born kind

vor houptschanden niht bewart,
from capital-disgraces not guards,

dâ sol man den unedelen man
there shall one the ignoble man

mit tugenden ferre für in hân.
with virtues far before him hold.

1681 Der edel sol sîn hôchgemuot,
The noble-one shall be high-spirited,

durch got, durch êre swenden guot.
for God, for honor make-vanish goods.

rouben ist ein bœser list.
robbing is an evil craft.

ich weiz wol, der der bœste ist
I know well, he the worst is

in einer wîten, rîchen stat,
in a wide, rich town,

daz man den diu rinder lât
that one him the cattle lets

trîben ûz und wider in:
drive out and back in:

dâ von ist roup niht edeler sin.
there from is robbing not noble mind.

1682 Swelhem edelen got gibt lîp und guot,
To-whichever noble-one God gives body and goods,

der als übel wirt gemuot,
who so ill becomes spirited,

daz sîn lîp ze einem rouber wirt,
that his person to a robber becomes,

gar elliu tugent in verbirt.
wholly all virtue him forgoes.

die armen hœrt man über in klagen.
the poor hears one over him lament.

des muoz er gar wol missehagen
of-that must he wholly well displease

guoten wîben: daz ist alsô.
to-good women: that is so.

von im wirt selten iemen vrô.
by him becomes seldom anyone glad.

Der edel rîche der sol geben 1683
The noble rich-one he shall give

den armen: daz ist rehtez leben.
to-the poor: that is right life.

swer zweinzigen nimt und einem gît,
whoever from-twenty takes and to-one gives,

diu gâbe brüefet alle zît
the gift proves all time

schelten, sünde: daz ist alsô.
reproach, sin: that is so.

ob sîner gâbe wirt einer frô,
if of-his gift becomes one glad,

sô werdent ir tûsent trûric gar:
so become of-them thousand sad wholly:

die schelten in alle sîniu jâr!
who reproach him all his years!

Die rouber die sint selten vrô. 1684
The robbers they are seldom glad.

ir künftec leit daz tœtet sô,
their future sorrow that kills so,

daz sî dort immer sint verlorn:
that they there ever are lost:

si wæren bezzer ungeborn.
they were better unborn.

diu helle ze lône in ist bereit:
the hell as reward to-them is ready:

si trûrent ir künftigez leit.
they sorrow their future sorrow.

swen hie die armen erbarment niht,
whom here the poor pity not,

daz selbe âne ende im dort geschiht.
the same without end to-him there happens.

1685 Der edel junge sol wesen vrô
The noble young-one shall be glad

und sol mit zühten tragen hô,
and shall with courtesies bear high,

und freu sich edele, guotes, jugent.
and rejoice himself nobly, of-good, youth.

tuot er des niht, er ist âne tugent.
(if)-does he that not, he is without virtue.

swer trûret âne hertzen leit,
whoever sorrows without heart's sorrow,

dem muoz sîn hôhez lop verseit.
to-him must his high praise refused.

trûren daz ist niemen guot:
sadness that is to-no-one good:

dâ von sol man sîn hôchgemuot.
there from shall one be high-spirited.

1686 Ez sol des edelen jungen lîp
It shall the noble young-one's person

sîn hôchgemuot durch ein guot wîp.
be high-spirited for a good woman.

und ist er niht von wîben vrô,
and (if)-is he not from women glad,

sô muoz er immer leben sô,
so must he ever live so,

daz er an freuden ist verirt.
that he in joys is astray.

sîn trûren im unsælde birt:
his sadness to-him misfortune bears:

schelten, spotten alle zît
reproach, mockery all time

im sîn swachez trûren gît.
him his base sadness gives.

Swâ sô ein schœniu vrowe guot, 1687
Wherever so a beautiful lady good,

diu reiniclîchen ist gemuot,
who purely is spirited,

von hertzen treutet einen man
from heart caresses a man

und im ir süezen lîbes gan
and to-him her sweet person grants

ze treuten wol sus unde sô,
to caress well thus and so,

und ist der niht von hertzen vrô,
and (if)-is he not from heart glad,

der ist an freuden gar verzagt:
he is in joys wholly despondent:

von reht er niemen wol behagt.
by right he no-one well pleases.

Mich hât ein reiniu vrowe guot 1688
Me has a pure lady good

vor trûren alsô her behuot,
from sadness so hither guarded,

daz ich bin vrô in aller zît.
that I am glad in all time.

ir güete mir hôchgemüete gît:
her goodness to-me high-spirit gives:

ich bin ir stæter dienestman,
I am her steadfast vassal,

mit triwen dienstes undertân
with faithfulness of-service subject

vil stæteclîchen sunder wanc.
very steadfastly without wavering.

diu liet ze dienest ich ir sanc:
the songs to service I her sang:

XLV.
XLV.

Wâfen über die gar unguoten,
Alarm over the wholly ungood-ones,

die dâ selten werdent frô.
who there seldom become glad.

Die heiz ich die ungemuoten:
Them call I the cheerless-ones:

dêst ir nam von reht alsô.
that-is their name by right so.

Wâfen über sie immer mêre:
Alarm over them ever more:

sie verliesent mit ir trûren sælde und êre.
they lose with their sadness bliss and honor.

Swâ ein wîp niht vrô gemachen
Wherever a woman not glad make

kan ir herzenlieben man
can her heart-dear man

Mit ir triuten, mit ir lachen,
With her caressing, with her laughing,

dem ist freude gar zergân.
to-him is joy wholly passed.

Freut in niht ir süezez lôsen,
(If)-gladdens him not her sweet flattering,

in gemachent nimmer vrô des meien rôsen.
him make never glad the May's roses.

Ich bin vrô von einer rôsen:
I am glad from a rose:

diu kan sprechen süeziu wort.
which can speak sweet words.

Ir vil lieplîch, güetlîch lôsen
Her very lovely, kindly flattering

gît mir hôher freuden hort.
gives me of-high joys hoard.

mit ir kleinvelrôtem munde
with her small-skinned-red mouth

ziuhet sie mir trûren gar ûz herzen grunde.
draws she me sadness wholly out-of heart's ground.

Schouwet, wie diu pie ir süeze
Look, how the bee her sweetness

ûz den bluomen ziehen kan.
out-of the flowers draw can.

Alsô ziehent mir ir grüeze
So draw me her greetings

trûren von dem herzen dan.
sadness from the heart thence.

Ir urloup und ouch ir grüezen
Her leave and also her greeting

kan sie mir mit süezen worten suoze süezen.
can she me with sweet words sweetly sweeten.

Sie hât hôhes muotes krône
She has of-high spirit crown

mit ir güete mir gegeben.
with her goodness me given.

Die hân ich von ir ze lône:
That have I from her as reward:

des muoz mîn muot hôhe sweben.
of-that must my spirit high soar.

Wol ir, daz sie mich sô krœnet
Well her, that she me so crowns

unde ir wîpheit mit vil hôhen tugenden schœnet!
and her womanhood with very high virtues beautifies!

XII · SEIZED AT FRAUENBURG

Sadness befits only the sinner, Ulrich says, and he praises his lady and sings Song XLVI. Three days after Saint Bartholomew's day, Pilgrim of Karst and Weinolt, men he trusted, visit his castle of Frauenburg, lure his household away, stab him three times, and seize him. They drive out his wife and household, keep his son, and his friends from Judenburg ride to his rescue.

1689 Nâch disen lieden gedâht ich dô,
After these songs thought I then,

swer hertzenlîchen wære unvrô
whoever heartily were unglad

durch anders iht niwan durch got,
for else anything but for God,

der wære von rehte der werlde spot.
he were by right the world's mockery.

sô habt daz ûf die triwe mîn:
so have that on the faithfulness mine:

swer trûret umbe die sünde sîn,
whoever sorrows for the sin his,

des trûren wirt ze freuden gar.
his sadness becomes to joys wholly.

daz gelaubet mir: wan ez ist wâr.
that believe me: for it is true.

Trûren daz ist niemen guot 1690
Sadness that is to-no-one good

wan dem, der ez umb sünde tuot.
but to-him, who it for sin does.

swer anders trûret, daz ist enwiht.
whoever otherwise sorrows, that is worthless.

trûren daz birt êren niht.
sadness that bears honors not.

swelch edel junc rîcher man
whichever noble young rich man

in dirre werlt wil êre hân,
in this world will honor have,

der sî mit zühten hôchgemuot:
he be with courtesies high-spirited:

daz ist für wâr ze êren guot.
that is for true to honors good.

Ich bin frô durch die vrowen mîn 1691
I am glad for the lady mine

und wil daz immer gerne sîn.
and will that ever gladly be.

diu guot mir vil freuden gît:
the good-one to-me many joys gives:

si ist mînes hertzen meyenzît.
she is of-my heart May-time.

diu süeze mich niht trûren lât:
the sweet-one me not sorrow lets:

mîn muot von ir vil hôhe stât.
my spirit from her very high stands.

der guoten ich vil guotes gan:
to-the good-one I much good grant:

nu hœret, wie si sî getân:
now hear, how she be made:

1692 Ich nim daz wol ûf mînen eit:
I take that well on my oath:

si ist von valschen dingen meit
she is of false things free

und ein vrowe maneger tugent.
and a lady of-many virtue.

si hât ir lîp her von ir jugent
she has her person hither from her youth

bewart vor aller missetât.
guarded from all misdeed.

diu guote manige tugende hât.
the good-one many virtues has.

sî ist prûn, wîz unde rôt.
she is brown, white and red.

diu sælde ze dienen mir ir gebôt.
the bliss to serve me her commanded.

1693 Ir preun ist schœne, ir wîze ist clâr,
Her brown is beautiful, her white is bright,

ir rœt ist lieplîch: daz ist wâr.
her red is lovely: that is true.

ich gihe, als mir daz hertze ie jach,
I declare, as me the heart ever declared,

daz ich sô schœnes nie niht gesach
that I so beautiful never anything saw

als ir prûn, rôt, wîzen lîp.
as her brown, red, white person.

si reine, süezze, sælic wîp,
she pure, sweet, blessed woman,

si vrowe ob al den vreuden mîn:
she lady above all the joys mine:

ich wil ir immer dienende sîn.
I will her ever serving be.

Ir lîp ist schœne hie unde dâ. 1694
Her person is beautiful here and there.

ir prûnez hâr, ir prûne brâ,
her brown hair, her brown brows,

ir wîzzer lîp, ir rôter munt
her white person, her red mouth

tuot mich vrô in des hertzen grunt.
makes me glad in the heart's ground.

ir sult für wâr daz ûf mir hân:
you shall for true that on me have:

ich sæhe si immer gerner an
I would-look her ever more-gladly at

danne einen engel: daz ist alsô.
than an angel: that is so.

mich tuot ir anplic ofte vrô.
me makes her face often glad.

Ich bin gein ir gar valsches vrî. 1695
I am toward her wholly of-falseness free.

si ist mir lieber, danne iht sî,
she is to-me dearer, than anything be,

si ist mir liep für elliu wîp
she is to-me dear before all women

und lieber danne mîn selbes lîp
and dearer than my own person

und liep für allez, daz ich hân
and dear before all, that I have

und immer mêr gewinnen kan.
and ever more win can.

…
(lacuna)

diu liet ich ir ze dienest sanc:
the songs I her to service sang:

XLVI.
XLVI.

Disiu liet diu heizent vrouwentanz:
These songs they are-called ladies'-dance:

diu sol niemen singen, ern sî vrô.
them shall no-one sing, unless-he be glad.

Swer mit zühten treit der freuden kranz,
Whoever with courtesies bears the joys' wreath,

und dem sîn muot stât von wîben hô,
and to-whom his spirit stands from women high,

Dem erloube ich sie ze singen wol:
To-him allow I them to sing well:

blîdeclîchen man sie tanzen sol.
blithely one them dance shall.

Trûren ist zewâre niemen guot
Sadness is truly to-no-one good

wan dem einen, der sîn sünde klaget.
but to-him alone, who his sin laments.

Hôhen lop erwirbet hôher muot.
High praise wins high spirit.

guoten wîben hôchmuot wol behaget:
to-good women high-spirit well pleases:

Dâ von wil ich immer mêre sîn
There from will I ever more be

hôchgemuot durch dich, guot vrouwe mîn.
high-spirited for thee, good lady mine.

Vreude gibt mir dîn wol redender munt,
Joy gives me thy well speaking mouth,

hôhen muot dîn reine, senfte sit:
high spirit thy pure, gentle manner:

Vreuden tou mir ûz des herzen grunt
Joys' dew to-me out-of the heart's ground

kumt von dir in elliu mîniu lit.
comes from thee into all my limbs.

Got hât sînen vlîz an dich geleit,
God has his diligence on thee laid,

dâ von dîn lîp êren krône treit.
there from thy person honors' crown bears.

Liehtiu ougen, dâ bî brûne brâ
Bright eyes, there by brown brows

hâstu und zwei rôtiu wängelîn.
hast-thou and two red little-cheeks.

Schœne bistu hie und schœne dâ.
Beautiful art-thou here and beautiful there.

brûn, rôt, wîz: der drîer varwe schîn
brown, red, white: the three colors' shine

Treit dîn hôch geborner, schœner lîp.
Bears thy high born, beautiful person.

tugende hâstu vil, guot wîplîch wîp.
virtues hast-thou many, good womanly woman.

Daz du alsô manege tugende hâst,
That thou so many virtues hast,

dâ von bin ich alles trûrens vrî.
there from am I of-all sadness free.

Sô du alsô schœne von mir gâst,
When thou so beautifully from me goest,

sô ist mir, als ich in dem himel sî:
so is to-me, as I in the heaven be:

Got sô schœnen engel nie gewan,
God so beautiful angel never won,

den ich für dich wolde sehen an.
whom I before thee would look at.

1696 Nâch disen lieden mir geschach
After these songs to-me happened

ein vil unpillîch ungemach:
a very unjust discomfort:

ich wart gevangen schedelîch
I was captured harmfully

und in für wâr gar lästerlîch,
and to-them for true wholly shamefully,

die mich dâ viengen. die wil ich
who me there captured. them will I

iu nennen hie: nu hœret mich:
you name here: now hear me:

der eine hiez der Pilgerîn
the one was-called the Pilgrim

von Karsse: der müezze unsælic sîn!
of Karst: he may unblessed be!

1697 Ich het im leides niht getân.
I had him of-sorrow nothing done.

er was für wâr mîn erepman,
he was for true my hereditary-man,

er was mir heinlîch, ich im holt.
he was to-me intimate, I to-him devoted.

mit dienst het er daz versolt,
with service had he that earned,

daz ich gein im was valsches vrî.
that I toward him was of-falseness free.

er was mir ze allen zîten bî,
he was to-me at all times by,

er dient mir sus, er dient mir sô:
he served me thus, he served me so:

ich was sîn ofte bî mir vrô.
I was of-him often by me glad.

Der ander was genant Weinolt: 1698
The other was named Weinolt:

dem was ich ouch von hertzen holt.
to-him was I also from heart devoted.

er was ein übergrôzzer man:
he was an overgreat man:

mit im ich schimpfes vil began.
with him I jesting much began.

sîn lîp der was vil ungestalt,
his person it was very misshapen,

sîn munt mit spæhen worten balt
his mouth with clever words bold

was, sîn hertze verholne truoc
was, his heart secretly bore

dêswâr untriwe ouch genuoc.
truly faithlessness also enough.

Weinolt und ouch her Pilgerîn, 1699
Weinolt and also sir Pilgrim,

die bêde unsælic müezzen sîn!
they both unblessed may be!

von rehte ich in des wünschende bin.
by right I them of-that wishing am.

war kom ir kristenlîcher sin,
whither came their Christian mind,

daz sî ir êre an mir verlurn
that they their honor on me lost

und für die triwe untriwe erkurn?
and for the faithfulness faithlessness chose?

ir herze in grôze untriwe riet:
their heart them great faithlessness counseled:

der rât si gar von êren schiet.
the counsel them wholly from honors parted.

Nu hœret rehte, waz ich iu sage:
Now hear rightly, what I you tell:

nâch sant Bartholomêus tage
after Saint Bartholomew's day

des dritten tages daz geschach,
of-the third day that happened,

daz ich nâch bade het guot gemach.
that I after bath had good ease.

in mîner kemenâten ich lac:
in my chamber I lay:

ditze was reht umb mitten tac.
this was right about mid day.

dise zwêne ze Frowenburc zuo riten
these two to Frauenburg toward rode

mit swinden, ungetriuwen siten.
with fierce, faithless manners.

Si kômen bêde an mîn tor: 1701
They came both to my gate:

dâ lie man sî niht lange vor.
there let one them not long before.

si hiez got willekommen sîn
them bade God welcome be

allez daz gesinde mîn.
all the household mine.

des dancten sî dô minneclîch:
for-that thanked they then lovingly:

ir gebærde was güetlîch.
their bearing was kindly.

ez sprach zehant her Pilgerîn:
there spoke forthwith sir Pilgrim:

«sagt an, waz tuot der herre mîn?»
«say on, what does the lord mine?»

Die mînen sprachen alzehant: 1702
The mine spoke forthwith:

«wir tuon iu daz für wâr bekant:
«we make you that for true known:

mîn herre sich slâfen hât geleit.»
my lord himself to-sleep has laid.»

er sprach: «daz ist ein grôzze trâcheit.
he spoke: «that is a great sloth.

ir sult durch mînen willen gên
you shall for my will go

zuo im und bitet in ûf stên,
to him and ask him up stand,

daz er vil balde gespreche mich
that he very quickly speak-with me

durch mînen willen: des bit ich.»
for my will: of-that bid I.»

1703 Mîn kamerære gie alzehant
My chamberlain went forthwith

zuo mir und tet mir daz bekant.
to me and made me that known.

er sprach: «vil lieber herre mîn,
he spoke: «very dear lord mine,

Weinolt und ouch her Pilgerîn
Weinolt and also sir Pilgrim

sint komen und wolden gern iuch sehen.»
are come and would gladly you see.»

ich sprach: «zwâr daz sol geschehen.»
I spoke: «truly that shall happen.»

ich stuont ûf willeclîch und gie,
I stood up willingly and went,

dâ ich sie inneclîch enpfie.
where I them heartily received.

1704 Ich het an mînen lîp geleit
I had on my person laid

zwô hosen und dar zuo lînîn kleit:
two hose and there to linen clothing:

kürsen und mantel ich an truoc.
fur-cloak and mantle I on wore.

mîn gruoz was gein in guot genuoc:
my greeting was toward them good enough:

vil willeclîch ich gein in gie,
very willingly I toward them went,

mit armen ich si beide umbvie.
with arms I them both embraced.

ich sprach: «vil liebe vriunde mîn,
I spoke: «very dear friends mine,

got müezzet ir willekomen sîn!»
God may you welcome be!»

Ir danken was gein mir güetlîch. 1705
Their thanking was toward me kindly.

ich was gein in gar triwenrîch:
I was toward them wholly faithfulness-rich:

ich nam ietwedern bî der hant,
I took each by the hand,

ich wîst si mit mir, dâ ich vant
I led them with me, where I found

under einer lin ein schœne banc.
under a window a beautiful bench.

in liep ze tuon was mîn gedanc:
them dear to do was my thought:

ich was in holt mit triwen gar:
I was to-them devoted with faithfulness wholly:

ich hiez sâ trinken bringen dar.
I bade at-once drink bring thither.

Ich sprach: «und welt ir ezzen iht?» 1706
I spoke: «and will you eat anything?»

«swer vrâget, der wil geben niht,»
«whoever asks, he will give nothing,»

alsô sprach her Pilgerîn.
so spoke sir Pilgrim.

man brâht uns spîse, met unde wîn:
one brought us food, mead and wine:

ich bôtz in wol, sus unde sô:
I offered-it them well, thus and so:

wir âzzen unde wâren vrô.
we ate and were glad.

dô wir gâzzen schône dâ,
when we had-eaten beautifully there,

dô sprach her Pilgerîn aber sâ:
then spoke sir Pilgrim again at-once:

1707 «Herre, welt ir hînt paizzen iht?»
«Lord, will you tonight hawk anything?»

«nein ich, ich wil paizzen niht.
«no I, I will hawk not.

ich wil ez durch mîn bat hînt lân.»
I will it for my bath tonight leave.»

dô sprach der ungetriwe man:
then spoke the faithless man:

«nu paizzet durch den willen mîn:
«now hawk for the will mine:

daz wil ich gern dienende sîn.
that will I gladly serving be.

wir haben zwên spärber mit uns brâht
we have two sparrowhawks with us brought

und haben ze paizzen hie gedâht.»
and have to hawk here thought.»

1708 Dô sprach ich: «friunt, her Pilgerîn,
Then spoke I: «friend, sir Pilgrim,

mac iu mîn paizzen dienst gesîn,
(if)-may to-you my hawking service be,

sô rît ich mit iu an der stunt.»
so ride I with you at the hour.»

dô hiez ich tuon den mînen kunt,
then bade I make to-the mine known,

daz sî ze velde bræhten vil
that they to field brought many

vogelhunde und vederspil.
bird-dogs and hawks.

der mînen wênic bî mir beleip:
of-the mine few by me remained:

mit botschaft ichs von mir vertreip.
with message I-them from me drove.

Swaz sô der mînen dâ was beliben, 1709
Whatever so of-the mine there was remained,

die het er schier gar danne vertriben:
them had he soon wholly thence driven:

er sant den her, er sant den hin.
he sent this-one hither, he sent that-one thither.

ûf grôzze untriwe stuont al sîn sin.
on great faithlessness stood all his mind.

ir sult für wâr gelouben daz:
you shall for true believe that:

dô ich al eine bî in gesaz,
when I all alone by them sat,

dô winct er sînen knappen sâ:
then beckoned he to-his squires at-once:

der stuonden zwên bereitet aldâ.
of-them stood two ready there.

Si trâten für den turn mîn. 1710
They stepped before the tower mine.

Weinolt und ouch der Pilgerîn
Weinolt and also the Pilgrim

die wischten bêde ûf alzehant.
they sprang both up forthwith.

si zucten mezzer bêde: zesant
they drew knives both: together

vielen bêde ûf mich zestunt.
fell both on me at-once.

mit mezzern drîer wunden wunt
with knives of-three wounds wounded

wart ich von in dâ, daz ist wâr:
was I by them there, that is true:

got weiz wol, ungedienet gar.
God knows well, undeserved wholly.

1711 Kürsen und mantel mir dô want
Fur-cloak and mantle me then wound

her Pilgrîn umb den hals zehant
sir Pilgrim about the neck forthwith

und dent mich gegen dem turn mîn.
and dragged me toward the tower mine.

mir kunde leider niht gesîn.
to-me could alas not be.

vil jæmerlîche lûte ich schrê:
very wretchedly loud I cried:

«ouwê, ouwê, ouwê, ouwê!
«alas, alas, alas, alas!

ouwê, waz hân ich iu getân?
alas, what have I you done?

ir sült durch got mich leben lân!»
you shall for God me live let!»

1712 Ez heten dise zwêne man
There had these two men

ir knehte bî mînem tore lân:
their servants by my gate left:

di underwunden sichs zehant,
they took-charge themselves-of-it forthwith,

swaz man dâ in dem hûse vant.
whatever one there in the house found.

der mînen balde man dô ûz treip,
of-the mine quickly one then out drove,

daz ir decheiner dâ beleip.
that of-them none there remained.

dô lief zuo mir diu kone mîn:
then ran to me the wife mine:

diu schrê: «ouwê, waz sol ditz sîn?»
she cried: «alas, what shall this be?»

Die zwên vil ungetriwe man 1713
The two very faithless men

sprâchen: «welt ir êre hân,
spoke: «will you honor have,

vrowe, sô gêt balde für daz tor:
lady, so go quickly before the gate:

dâ vindet ir die iwern vor;
there find you the yours before;

ir sult vil balde von uns gân!
you shall very quickly from us go!

wir wellen in und allez daz hân,
we will him and all that have,

daz er gewinnen immer mac,
that he win ever may,

oder ez muoz sîn sîn endes tac.»
or it must be his end's day.»

Diu guote sach mich weinende an. 1714
The good-one looked me weeping at.

ich sprach: «ir sult vil balde ûz gân!
I spoke: «you shall very quickly out go!

als liep iu iwer êre sî,
as dear to-you your honor be,

sô sît mir hie niht langer bî!»
so be me here not longer by!»

mit mînen kinden sî dô gie
with my children she then went

gegen dem tor. «vrowe, lât uns hie
toward the gate. «lady, leave us here

iwern sun! daz muoz ouch sîn,»
your son! that must also be,»

sus sprach zuo ir her Pilgerîn.
thus spoke to her sir Pilgrim.

1715 Daz kint nam er ir abe der hant,
The child took he from-her off the hand,

und swaz der ungemuote vant
and whatever the ill-spirited-one found

bî den vrowen kleider dâ,
by the ladies clothes there,

diu nam er in gar elliu sâ:
them took he from-them wholly all at-once:

ir kleinôt er in allez nam.
their jewels he from-them all took.

daz was iedoch niht ritter zam.
that was yet not knight befitting.

dâ mit er sî für daz tor treip.
there with he them before the gate drove.

mîn sun aldâ bî mir beleip.
my son there by me remained.

1716 Mîn wîp und daz gesinde mîn
My wife and the household mine

schieden dan: daz muoste sîn.
parted thence: that must be.

si fuoren jæmerlîchen hein
they went wretchedly home

den rehten wec gein Liehtenstein.
the right way toward Liechtenstein.

daz mære dô snellîch erschal
the tidings then quickly resounded

in der gegent über al.
in the region over all.

daz mære was mînen friunten leit:
the tidings was to-my friends sorrow:

der wart vil kürtzlîch bereit
of-them became very shortly ready

Wol drithalphundert oder mê: 1717
Well two-and-a-half-hundred or more:

den tet mîn vancnüsse wê.
to-them did my captivity woe.

von Judenburc die friunde mîn
of Judenburg the friends mine

sach man vil snellîch ûf sîn:
saw one very quickly up be:

ze Frowenburc si kômen schier.
to Frauenburg they came quickly.

ir sült für wâr gelouben mir:
you shall for true believe me:

von hertzen ichs ungerne sach:
from heart I-them unwillingly saw:

ir kunft tet mir grôz ungemach.
their coming did me great discomfort.

XIII · A YEAR IN CHAINS

Pilgrim threatens to hang Ulrich from the window unless his friends withdraw, and they go. Expecting death, Ulrich takes a crumb as the sacrament, then buys his life with a promise of ransom, and is put in irons, where he sings Song XLVII. After a year and three weeks Count Meinhard of Gorizia frees him, though Ulrich must leave both his sons and two other children there as pledges, and he later frees his castle. Ulrich's lady's laughter restores his spirit, and he sings Song XLVIII.

Ich sach si ungern: des gie mir nôt, 1718
I saw them unwillingly: of-that went to-me need,

wan ich von in was nâhen tôt.
for I by them was near dead.

do si kômen für die burc gerant,
when they came before the castle running,

her Pilgerîn nam mich zehant,
sir Pilgrim took me forthwith,

er fuort mich gein einer lin;
he led me toward a window;

er sprach: «habt ir ze leben sin,
he spoke: «(if)-have you to live mind,

welt ir den lîp iht lenger sparn,
(if)-will you the life any longer spare,

sô heizzet sî von hinnen varn.»
so bid them from hence go.»

1719 Ein seil er umb den hals mîn bant;
A rope he about the neck mine bound;

er sprach: «ich hôhe iuch hie zehant
he spoke: «I hang you here forthwith

über die lin dâ hin gein in,
over the window there thither toward them,

habent sî ze stürmen decheinen sin,
(if)-have they to storm any mind,

und fürht si doch alle niht umb ein ey.»
and fear them yet all not by an egg.»

vil jæmerlîchen lûte ich schrei
very wretchedly loud I cried

zuo den kunden: «waz welt ir?
to the acquaintances: «what will you?

ir habt vil tumbes hertzen gir.
you have very foolish heart's desire.

Welt ir mich tœten, wie hân ich 1720
(If)-will you me kill, how have I

gedienet daz? des wundert mich.
deserved that? of-that wonders me.

ir mügt mich sus erlœsen niht
you may me thus release not

von dirre grôzen ungeschiht.
from this great mishap.

ez ist ein jæmerlîchiu nôt:
it is a wretched distress:

kumt ir iht fürbaz, ich bin tôt.
(if)-come you any further, I am dead.

ich muoz in tôdes bluote baden,
I must in death's blood bathe,

und mügt ir in doch niht geschaden.»
and may you them yet not harm.»

Iezuo ich dreut, iezuo ich bat. 1721
Now I threatened, now I begged.

daz treib ich mit in an die stat,
that drove I with them to the point,

daz sî von danne fuoren sâ
that they from thence went at-once

und liezen mich gevangen dâ.
and left me captured there.

die naht leit ich vil michel nôt.
the night suffered I very great distress.

man dreut mir ofte, ich müeste tôt
one threatened me often, I must dead

geligen, swanne ez würde tac;
lie, whenever it became day;

dâ von ich niht gemaches pflac.
there from I not of-ease took-care.

1722 Sâ dô der ander tac erschein,
At-once when the second day appeared,

dô wart ich kürtzlîch des enein,
then became I shortly of-that agreed,

sît daz ich müeste ligen tôt,
since that I must lie dead,

daz ich versuoht, ob iender brôt
that I tested, whether anywhere bread

læge, dâ ich gevangen lac:
lay, where I captured lay:

vil sêre ich daz ze suochen pflac.
very sorely I that to seek took-care.

ein brôsem ich dâ ligende vant:
a crumb I there lying found:

die huob ich weinende ûf zehant.
it raised I weeping up forthwith.

1723 Dâ mit sô kniet ich ûf diu knie
There with so knelt I on the knees

und klaget die mînen sünde hie
and lamented the mine sins here

dem, den verheln mac niemen niht
to-him, from-whom hide may no-one anything

und der in elliu hertze siht.
and who into all hearts sees.

sînen lîchnam ich dô weinend nam
his body I then weeping took

mit triwen, als mir daz gezam:
with faithfulness, as me that befitted:

do enpfalhe ich im die sêle mîn
then commended I him the soul mine

vil vaste ûf al die tugende sîn.
very fast on all the virtues his.

Dô gie her Pilgrîn zuo mir in: 1724
Then went sir Pilgrim to me in:

ze tœten mich was al sîn sin.
to kill me was all his mind.

er sprach: «und welt ir lenger leben,
he spoke: «and (if)-will you longer live,

sô sagt, waz ir uns wellet geben.»
so say, what you us will give.»

«ich gib iu allez, daz ich hân
«I give you all, that I have

und immer mêre gewinnen kan.
and ever more win can.

jâ wirt iu guotes vil gegeben
yes is to-you of-goods much given

dar umbe, daz ir mich lâzet leben.»
there for, that you me let live.»

Swie vînt mir der ungetriwe was, 1725
However enemy to-me the faithless-one was,

diu miet half doch, daz ich genas.
the reward helped yet, that I recovered.

er gedâht alsô: «er gît mir guot,
he thought thus: «he gives me goods,

und küele ich dannoch mînen muot
and cool I yet my spirit

an im zewâre reht, swie ich wil.
on him truly right, however I will.

er muoz mir guotes geben vil,
he must me of-goods give much,

und lâze ich in doch niht genesen:
and let I him yet not recover:

daz sol für wâr reht alsô wesen.»
that shall for true right so be.»

1726 Er hiez viel sêre besmiden mich
He bade very sorely fetter me

in einen boyen: daz müet mich.
into a shackle: that troubles me.

der poye was unmâzen grôz.
the shackle was beyond-measure great.

des mich vor grôzer nôt bedrôz.
of-that me for great distress wearied.

für wâr ich daz wol sprechen mac,
for true I that well speak may,

darinne wart mir lanc vil manic tac.
therein became to-me long very many-a day.

in dirre nôt mîn hertze riet
in this distress my heart counseled

mir ze singen disiu liet:
me to sing these songs:

XLVII.
XLVII.

Nû hilf, wîbes güete!
Now help, woman's goodness!

mir ist nôt der helfe dîn:
to-me is need of-the help thine:

Mir wil hôchgemüete
Me will high-spirit

sterben in dem herzen mîn.
die in the heart mine.

Wîbes güete, dû bist guot:
Woman's goodness, thou art good:

hilf, daz iht verderbe jæmerlîch mîn hôher muot!
help, that not perish wretchedly my high spirit!

Swâ man saget mære,
Wherever one tells tidings,

daz mîn lîp gevangen lît,
that my person captured lies,

Dêst den vrouwen swære:
That-is to-the ladies grief:

wan den diene ich mîne zît.
for them serve I my time.

Swelhiu wîplîch güete hât,
Whichever womanly goodness has,

ich weiz wol, mîn kumber ir ze herzen nâhen gât.
I know well, my trouble to-her to heart near goes.

Von swem mich verliesent
Of whom me lose

guotiu wîp, der habe für wâr:
good women, he have for true:

Die schult sie verkiesent
The guilt they forgive

nimmer endelîchen gar.
never truly wholly.

Daz ist reht: ez ist alsô;
That is right: it is so;

sît ich bin ir leides trûric unde ir êren vrô.
since I am of-their sorrow sad and of-their honors glad.

Mîner vrouwen güete
My lady's goodness

unde ir lieplîch schœner lîp
and her lovely beautiful person

Nert mir hôchgemüete:
Nourish me high-spirit:

durch sie êre ich elliu wîp.
for her honor I all women.

Daz hat sie verschuldet wol,
That has she deserved well,

daz ich durch ir êre allen vrouwen dienen sol.
that I for her honor all ladies serve shall.

Dem vil werden wîbe
To-the very worthy woman

muoz man hôher tugende jehen.
must one high virtue declare.

An ir süezem lîbe
In her sweet person

wart unwîpheit nie gesehen.
was unwomanliness never seen.

Sie ist schœne, sie ist guot,
She is beautiful, she is good,

kiusche, blîde, stæte, zühterîch, wîplîch gemuot.
chaste, blithe, steadfast, courteous, womanly spirited.

Rœter denne ein rôse
Redder than a rose

ist ir munt, süez unde heiz.
is her mouth, sweet and hot.

Siest mit zühten lôse
She-is with courtesies gracious

(schœner wîp ich niender weiz),
(more-beautiful woman I nowhere know),

Brûn ir brâwe, wîz ir lîp.
Brown her brows, white her person.

von gepurt ein vrouwe ist sie und von tugenden wîp.
by birth a lady is she and by virtues woman.

Kiuschlîch smielen, lachen
Chaste smiling, laughing

kan ir kleinvelrôter munt.
can her small-skinned-red mouth.

Sie kan süeze machen
She can sweet make

ir gebærde zaller stunt.
her bearing at-all hours.

Ir munt unde ir ougen lieht,
Her mouth and her eyes bright,

sô mich diu an lachent, hôhes muotes man mich siht.
when me they at laugh, of-high spirit one me sees.

Diu liet diu wâren minneclîch. 1727
The songs they were lovely.

ez dûhte vil manige wunderlîch,
it seemed very to-many wondrous,

dô ich mit solhen nœten ranc,
when I with such distresses wrestled,

daz ich bî der zît niuwez sanc.
that I at the time new-thing sang.

dô moht ich vergezen niht,
then might I forget not,

der mîn lîp noch ze frowen giht
whom my person still as lady declares

und der ich immer dienen wil
and whom I ever serve will

mit triuwen an mîn endes zil.
with faithfulness until my end's goal.

1728 Ich lac gevangen, daz ist wâr,
I lay captured, that is true,

drî wochen unde ein gantzez jâr.
three weeks and a whole year.

dar inne leide ich vil manige nôt:
there in suffered I very many-a distress:

mir was vil ofte nâhen der tôt.
to-me was very often near the death.

ich wilz iu ûf mîn triuwe sagen:
I will-it you on my faithfulness tell:

ich was vil offte nâch erslagen:
I was very often nearly slain:

mit mezzern und mit swerten an
with knives and with swords at

lief mich vil ofte der swinde man.
ran me very often the fierce man.

1729 Mîn munt von wârheit eu des swert:
My mouth by truth you of-that swears:

wan daz mich got von himel nert,
but that me God from heaven nourishes,

ich wære von in vil ofte tôt:
I were by them very often dead:

der half mir von der starken nôt.
he helped me from the strong distress.

ich sage iu, wie ich ledic wart.
I tell you, how I free became.

ez wart von Görtze grâve Meinhart
there was of Gorizia count Meinhard

von dem keiser uns gesant
by the emperor to-us sent

ze herren in daz Stîrelant.
as lord into the Styrian-land.

Dô dem vil êregernden man 1730
When to-the very honor-desiring man

mîn vancnusse wart kunt getan:
my captivity was known made:

daz was im hertzenlîchen leit.
that was to-him heartily sorrow.

der biderbe, hôchgemuote reit
the worthy, high-spirited-one rode

ze Vrowenburc mit herren vil,
to Frauenburg with lords many,

der ich iu hie niht nennen wil.
whom I you here not name will.

der biderbe macht mich ledic sâ:
the worthy-one made me free at-once:

ich muost ze pfande aber lâzen dâ
I must as pledge however leave there

Mîn süne bêde und ouch zwei kint. 1731
My sons both and also two children.

mîn burc die macht ich ledic sint:
my castle that made I free since:

wie, daz wil ich iuch verdagen
how, that will I you conceal

und wil fürbaz von frowen sagen.
and will further of ladies tell.

dô ich der nœt aldâ genas,
when I of-the distress there recovered,

dô wart ichz reht, derz ê dâ was.
then became I-it right, who-it before there was.

ich het verloren starkez guot:
I had lost great goods:

waz danne? ich het aber hôhen muot.
what then? I had again high spirit.

1732 Nû mügt ir gern hœren daz,
Now may you gladly hear that,

wâ von ich mîner nœt vergaz
where from I of-my distress forgot

und wâ von ich wart hôchgemuot:
and where from I became high-spirited:

ich sach, daz mir noch sanfte tuot,
I saw, what to-me still gently does,

die vrowen mîn mich lachen an,
the lady mine me laugh at,

dâ von ich hôhen muot gewan.
there from I high spirit won.

ir lachen tet mir alsô wol,
her laughing did me so good,

daz ich dâ von wart freuden vol.
that I there from became of-joys full.

1733 Ir munt sô süezlîch lachen kan,
Her mouth so sweetly laugh can,

swanne er mich güetlîch lachet an,
whenever it me kindly laughs at,

daz mir der muot muoz hôhe stân
that to-me the spirit must high stand

und al mîn trûren gar zergân.
and all my sadness wholly pass.

ir kleinvelheizrôter munt
her small-skinned-hot-red mouth

tuot mir mit lachen freude kunt:
makes me with laughing joy known:

enmitten in des hertzen grunt
in-the-middle into the heart's ground

tuot mich sîn lachen minnewunt.
makes me its laughing love-wounded.

In dem stæten hertzen mîn 1734
In the steadfast heart mine

muoz sî versigelt immer sîn
must she sealed ever be

mit triuwen, al die wîle ich lebe.
with faithfulness, all the while I live.

si ist mîner hôhen freuden gebe:
she is of-my high joys giver:

si ist mir liep für elliu wîp
she is to-me dear before all women

und lieber danne mîn selbes lîp
and dearer than my own person

und lieber, danne iht dinges sî.
and dearer, than any thing be.

ich bin gein ir gar valsches vrî.
I am toward her wholly of-falseness free.

In daz hertze mîn geleit 1735
Into the heart mine laid

hât sî mîn wernde stæticheit.
has her my lasting steadfastness.

got gebe, daz ez mir wol ergê:
God grant, that it to-me well go:

dar ûz sô kumt si nimmer mê.
there out-of so comes she never more.

ez sî tac oder ez sî naht,
it be day or it be night,

si hât dar inne sô grôze maht,
she has there in so great might,

daz sî gebiutet dâ, swaz si wil,
that she commands there, whatever she will,

es sî lützel oder vil.
it be little or much.

1736 Swanne ich durch slâf aleine lige,
Whenever I for sleep alone lie,

gemaches an dem bette pflige,
of-ease on the bed take-care,

sô muoz daz senede hertze mîn
so must the longing heart mine

mit ir für wâr unmüezic sîn.
with her for true busy be.

mit ir ez vil unmuoze hât:
with her it much busyness has:

mit spilenden freuden umbe gât
with sparkling joys about goes

ez mit ir sus unde sô:
it with her thus and so:

si sint dâ mit einander vrô.
they are there with one-another glad.

1737 Diu selbe süeze unmuoze gît
The same sweet busyness gives

mir hôher freuden hôchgezît.
me of-high joys high-feast.

sît ich die wârheit sprechen sol,
since I the truth speak shall,

so getet mir nie niht alsô wol
so did me never anything so well

sô daz, swanne ich gedenke an sie:
as that, whenever I think of her:

dâ von mich trûren ie verlie.
there from me sadness ever left.

mîn hertze sich nie von ir geschiet:
my heart itself never from her parted:

dâ von sange ich disiu liet:
there from sang I these songs:

XLVIII.

XLVIII.

Vrouwe, mîner freuden frouwe,
Lady, of-my joys lady,

vrouwe mîn übr allez, daz ich hân,
lady mine over all, that I have,

Swanne ich iuwer schœne schouwe
Whenever I your beauty behold

und mich iuwer ougen lachent an,
and me your eyes laugh at,

Sô wird ich als herzenlîchen vrô,
So become I so heartily glad,

daz mîn muot stât für die sunnen hô.
that my spirit stands before the sun high.

Wîplîch wîp, von iuwer güete
Womanly woman, from your goodness

bin ich ofte worden hôchgemuot.
am I often become high-spirited.

Nû ist mîn lîp in ungemüete
Now is my person into ill-humor

komen, dâ für sult ir mir wesen guot.
come, there for shall you to-me be good.

Lachet mich mit spilnden ougen an:
Laugh me with sparkling eyes at:

sô muoz al mîn trûren gar zergân.
so must all my sadness wholly pass.

Lachen iuwerm rôten munde
Laughing to-your red mouth

schône stât und iuwern ougen lieht:
beautifully stands and to-your eyes bright:

Dâ von freut ez mich von grunde,
There from gladdens it me from ground,

sô daz man ûz mînen ougen siht
so that one out-of my eyes sees

Vreuden tou vor herzenliebe gân,
Joys' dew for heart's-love go,

sô mich munt und ougen lachent an.
when me mouth and eyes laugh at.

In dem herzen mîn versigelet
In the heart mine sealed

hân ich iuwern reinen, süezen lîp,
have I your pure, sweet person,

Mit der stæte alsô verrigelet,
With the steadfastness so bolted,

daz dar ûz in nimmer maget noch wîp
that there out-of it never maiden nor woman

Mac verdringen weder naht noch tac.
May drive-out neither night nor day.

ir sît diu, an der mîn freude ie lac.
you are she, on whom my joy ever lay.

Mich freut diu vil süeze unmuoze,
Me gladdens the very sweet busyness,

daz ich iu sol immer diende sîn.
that I you shall ever serving be.

iuwer munt der kan sô suoze
your mouth it can so sweetly

sprechen, daz er freut daz herze mîn.
speak, that it gladdens the heart mine.

iuwer minneclîchen, süezen wort
your lovely, sweet words

sint gar mîner hôhen freuden hort.
are wholly of-my high joys hoard.

Diu liet gesungen wurden dô, 1738
The songs sung were then,

dô maneger wart von roube unvrô
when many-a-one became from robbery unglad

ze Stîre und ouch in Œsterrîch.
in Styria and also in Austria.

do betwanc mich des diu minneclîch,
then compelled me to-that the lovely-one,

diu hertzenliebe frowe mîn,
the heart-dear lady mine,

daz man mich sach bî freuden sîn.
that one me saw by joys be.

swie ez doch in den landen gie,
however it yet in the lands went,

ich kom von mînen vreuden nie.
I came from my joys never.

Ulrich reflects that whoever serves a worthy woman must be pure of heart. A woman of beauty and wit, he says, chooses carefully, while hasty love ends quickly; were he a woman, he would give himself only to a steadfast man. He sings Song XLIX, then Song L on the cheerless times in Styria and Austria. He advises ladies that goodness is the best garment and warns them against false men, and sings Song LI.

1739 Ich gedâht in hôhem muot alsô:
I thought in high spirit thus:

«er mac wol immer wesen vrô,
«he may well ever be glad,

der einem werden wîbe sol
who a worthy woman shall

mit willen dienen: dem ist wol.
with will serve: to-him is well.

er muoz hân reines hertzen rât
he must have pure heart's counsel

und vrî sîn gar vor missetât
and free be wholly from misdeed

und haben hôher tugende vil,
and have of-high virtues much,

ob er ir minne verdienen wil.
if he her love earn will.

1740 Ein wîp, diu schœne und witze hât
A woman, who beauty and wit has

und sich schamt aller missetât,
and herself shames of-all misdeed,

swelch man der lîp erwerben sol,
whichever man whose person win shall,

der bedarf gelückes wol.
he needs of-luck well.

jâ muoz sîn hôhiu werdecheit
yes must his high worthiness

in allen landen werden breit,
in all lands become broad,

ê daz si lâzze sich an in;
before that she let herself on him;

des ich für wâr wol bürge bin.
of-that I for true well surety am.

Swelch man erwerben mac ein wîp, 1741
Whichever man win may a woman,

diu tugende hât und schœnen lîp,
who virtues has and beautiful person,

der mac des wol für sælde jehen.
he may of-that well for bliss declare.

wie kunde im immer baz geschehen,
how could to-him ever better happen,

swenne er si treutet sus unde sô,
whenever he her caresses thus and so,

und sî des ist von hertzen vrô
and she of-that is from heart glad

und sî im willeclîchen gan,
and she him willingly grants,

swes er mit ir beginnen kan.
whatever he with her begin can.

Ich weiz wol, daz ein tumber man 1742
I know well, that a foolish man

nimmer wol erwerben kan
never well win can

ein wîp, diu schœne und witze hât.
a woman, who beauty and wit has.

swaz sô sîn lîp tumpheit begât,
whatever so his person foolishness commits,

dâ hüetet sî ir êren vor.
there guards she her honors before.

sîn lîp muoz in der Êren tor
his person must into the Honor's gate

mit hôhem lobe ê komen sîn,
with high praise before come be,

ê sî in lâzze in ir hertzen schrîn.
before she him let into her heart's shrine.

1743 Si ist ein sinnelôsez wîp,
She is a senseless woman,

diu ungezognes mannes lîp
who ill-bred man's person

lât komen in ir hertzen schrîn.
lets come into her heart's shrine.

ich nim daz ûf die triwe mîn,
I take that on the faithfulness mine,

daz er dar inne unlange vrist
that he there in not-long while

von ir beider schulden ist.
through their both faults is.

sîn unfuor, ir gæher muot,
his misconduct, her hasty spirit,

ist in ze scheiden beiden guot.
is to-them to part both good.

Ich weiz wol, gæhes mannes lîp 1744
I know well, hasty man's person

erwirbet gâhes gæhez wîp.
wins hastily hasty woman.

sîn gæher site, ir gæher muot,
his hasty manner, her hasty spirit,

ist in ze gæher liebe guot.
is to-them for hasty love good.

si gâhet zuo im und er zuo ir:
she hastens to him and he to her:

ir gæhiu liebe hât ende schir;
their hasty love has end soon;

si lernet alle tage ie mê
she learns all days ever more

daz übel wort ouwê, ouwê.
the ill word alas, alas.

Wær ich ein wîp, und solt ich mich 1745
Were I a woman, and should I myself

ze eigen geben, sô wolt ich
as own give, so would I

mich geben dem, der wære mîn:
myself give to-him, who were mine:

des wolt ouch ich mit triwen sîn.
of-that would also I with faithfulness be.

ez müest an mich sîn stæticheit
it must toward me his steadfastness

gar sunder wenken sîn bereit:
wholly without wavering be ready:

sô wold ich im sîn undertân
so would I to-him be subject

als ein guot wîp ir lieben man.
as a good woman to-her dear man.

1746 Swâ stæter man ein stætez wîp
Wherever steadfast man a steadfast woman

erwirbet, wol ir beider lîp!
wins, well their both person!

in hât für wâr got bêden geben
to-them has for true God both given

ein wunnebernde, süezze leben.
a delight-bearing, sweet life.

sîn stæticheit, ir stæter muot
his steadfastness, her steadfast spirit

ist in ze stæten freuden guot.
is to-them for steadfast joys good.

si enwenkent an einander niht;
they waver from one-another not;

dâ von in ofte wol geschiht.
there from to-them often well happens.

1747 Ich wil der lieben vrowen mîn
I will to-the dear lady mine

mit dienst alsô stæte sîn,
with service so steadfast be,

daz ich ir diene, di wîle ich lebe.
that I her serve, the while I live.

si ist mîner hôhen freuden gebe.
she is of-my high joys giver.

ez wirt mîn stætiu stæticheit
there is my steadfast steadfastness

mit dienst gar an sî geleit.
with service wholly on her laid.

und dient ich ir mit stæte niht,
and served I her with steadfastness not,

sô wære mîn dienst gar enwiht.
so were my service wholly worthless.

Si gevellet mir sô rehte wol, 1748
She pleases me so rightly well,

daz ich mit stæte ir dienen sol.
that I with steadfastness her serve shall.

und ob ich wünschen solde ein wîp,
and if I wish should a woman,

ir güete, ir schœne, ir süezen lîp,
her goodness, her beauty, her sweet person,

dâ müest si ûf die triwe mîn
there must she on the faithfulness mine

gelîch gar mîner vrowen sîn.
like wholly to-my lady be.

swer sî mit mînen ougen siht,
whoever her with my eyes sees,

der gesach nie sô schœnes niht.
he saw never so beautiful anything.

Sî ist schœne, sî ist guot, 1749
She is beautiful, she is good,

sî ist reiniclîch gemuot,
she is purely spirited,

si ist gar alles wandels vrî:
she is wholly of-all blemish free:

ir wont vil hôher tugende bî:
to-her dwells very high virtue by:

si ist gar nâch dem wunsche mîn.
she is wholly after the wish mine.

des wil ir vil stæte sîn
of-that will to-her very steadfast be

mîn hertze, daz sich nie von ir geschiet.»
my heart, which itself never from her parted.»

ich sanc ze dienst ir disiu liet:
I sang to service to-her these songs:

XLIX.

XLIX.

Ein man bedarf wol sinne,
A man needs well senses,

der eines werden wîbes hulde wil
who a worthy woman's favor will

Verdienen und ir minne:
Earn and her love:

jâ muoz er haben tugende und fuoge vil.
yes must he have virtues and fitness much.

Ungefüeges mannes werben
Unfitting man's striving

muoz für wâr gar verderben,
must for true wholly perish,

sô dem gefüegen wirt gelônet hô.
when to-the fitting-one is rewarded high.

Swâ sô von tumbem wîbe
Wherever so from foolish woman

gar ungefüegem manne liep geschiht,
wholly to-unfitting man love happens,

Daz birt ir beider lîbe
That bears to-their both persons

iedoch die lenge herzen wunne niht.
yet the length heart's delight not.

Sîn unfuore muoz ir leiden.
His misconduct must her make-hateful.

sô gât ez an ein scheiden:
so goes it to a parting:

ir beider liebe hât ein ende schier.
their both love has an end soon.

Und sol ich niht erwerben
And (if)-shall I not win

mit dienste die vil lieben vrouwen mîn,
with service the very dear lady mine,

Sô muoz mîn lîp verderben
So must my person perish

gar sunder wanc: sô stæte wil ich sîn.
wholly without wavering: so steadfast will I be.

Jâ kan nimmer liep von wîbe
Yes can never love from woman

geschehen mînem lîbe,
happen to-my person,

wan von der guoten, diech ze frouwen hân.
but from the good-one, whom-I as lady have.

Diu mac mich vrô gemachen.
She may me glad make.

siest mînes herzen vreuden lêre alsô,
she-is of-my heart's joys teaching so,

Daz ir vil süezez lachen
That her very sweet laughing

mir ofte brâht hât mîn gemüete hô.
to-me often brought has my mind high.

Ir gebærde, ir schœne, ir güete,
Her bearing, her beauty, her goodness,

ir wîplîch guot gemüete
her womanly good mind

hât tugende vil ân alle missetât.
has virtues many without all misdeed.

Und ob ich wünschen solde
And if I wish should

ein wîp mir selben nâch dem willen mîn,
a woman to-me self after the will mine,

Wie ich sie haben wolde,
How I her have would,

diu müeste gelîch gar mîner vrouwen sîn
she must alike wholly to-my lady be

An dem lîbe, an dem muote.
In the person, in the spirit.

diu reine, süeze, guote
the pure, sweet, good-one

tuot mir alsô, daz ich bin hôch gemuot.
does to-me so, that I am high spirited.

Disiu liet ich niuwe sanc,
These songs I newly sang,

dô rehtiu freude was gar kranc
when right joy was wholly weak

in Stîr und ouch in Œsterrîch.
in Styria and also in Austria.

si lebten alle trûriclîch.
they lived all sadly.

die rîchen wâren gar unguot,
the rich-ones were wholly ungood,

si wâren übellîch gemuot,
they were evilly spirited,

si tâten an einander leit.
they did to one-another sorrow.

dâ swanten si mit ir werdecheit.
there made-vanish they with their worthiness.

Man sach si niht wan roubes pflegen: 1751
One saw them nothing but of-robbery take-care:

der vrowen dienest was gelegen.
the ladies' service was laid-low.

die jungen wâren ungemuot:
the young-ones were ill-spirited:

si swanten lästerlîch ir guot.
they made-vanish shamefully their goods.

rouben was ir stæter sit:
robbing was their steadfast custom:

dâ swanten sî ir jugent mit.
there made-vanish they their youth with.

si heten gar unguoten sin:
they had wholly ungood mind:

ir leben gie mit übel hin.
their life went with ill thither.

Swaz si tâten, ich was vrô: 1752
Whatever they did, I was glad:

mîn muot stuont von der guoten hô:
my spirit stood from the good-one high:

der was mîn hôher muot niht leit.
to-her was my high spirit not sorrow.

man sach mich ofte sîn gemeit.
one saw me often be joyful.

swaz iemen tet, swaz iemen sprach,
whatever anyone did, whatever anyone spoke,

vil hôhes muotes man mich sach;
very of-high spirit one me saw;

ze freuden stuont gar mîn gedanc:
to joys stood wholly my thought:

dâ von ich disiu liet ouch sanc:
there from I these songs also sang:

L.
L.

Waz dar umbe, ist verswunden
What there for, is vanished

uns der sumer? des mac werden rât.
to-us the summer? of-that may become remedy.

Sîn zît wird wol wider funden.
Its time is well again found.

ich klag, daz diu werlt sô übel stât,
I lament, that the world so ill stands,

Daz nu trûret maneges lîp,
That now sorrows many-a-one's person,

der vrô solde sîn durch guotiu wîp.
who glad should be for good women.

Vreude und zuht hât vil nâch ende:
Joy and courtesy has very nearly end:

junge und alde sint niht wol gemuot.
young and old are not well spirited.

Got den grôzen kumber wende,
God the great trouble turn,

sô daz noch die rîchen werden guot.
so that yet the rich-ones become good.

Die siht man ungüetlîch leben:
Them sees one unkindly live:

trûren hât in ir grôz übel geben.
sadness has to-them their great ill given.

Mich nimt wunder, daz die jungen
Me takes wonder, that the young-ones

und die rîchen trûrent bî ir zît.
and the rich-ones sorrow in their time.

Waz hât sie dar zuo betwungen,
What has them there to compelled,

daz in wîp noch jugent freude gît?
that to-them woman nor youth joy gives?

Nû sîn trûric unde unfrô!
Now be-they sad and unglad!

mir stât durch ein guot wîp mîn muot hô.
to-me stands for a good woman my spirit high.

Diu hât sich vil wol behüetet
She has herself very well guarded

und bewart vor aller missetât.
and kept from all misdeed.

Ir lîp mir sô güetlîch güetet,
Her person me so kindly treats-with-kindness,

daz mîn muot von schulden hôhe stât.
that my spirit by rights high stands.

Siest sô reht güetlîchen guot,
She-is so rightly kindly good,

daz ir güete mir gît hôhen muot.
that her goodness to-me gives high spirit.

Durch die reinen, süezen, guoten,
For the pure, sweet, good,

herzenlieben, werden vrouwen mîn
heart-dear, worthy lady mine

Wil ich mit den wol gemuoten
Will I with the well spirited-ones

immer gerne hôhes muotes sîn.
ever gladly of-high spirit be.

Ir ist liep, daz ich bin frô:
To-her is dear, that I am glad:

dâ von stât mir mîn gemüete hô.
there from stands to-me my mind high.

1753 Nâch disen lieden gedâht ich dô:
After these songs thought I then:

«sît daz diu werlt ist als unfrô,
«since that the world is so unglad,

wie süln die vrowen danne leben?
how shall the ladies then live?

möht ich in wîsen rât gegeben,
might I them wise counsel give,

daz tæt ich ûf die triuwe mîn.
that did I on the faithfulness mine.

ich wil in immer diende sîn
I will them ever serving be

und immer wesen undertân
and ever be subject

und râten, als ich beste kan.»
and counsel, as I best can.»

1754 Dô riet ich in mit triwen sô,
Then counseled I them with faithfulness so,

daz sî mit zühten wæren vrô.
that they with courtesies were glad.

ich sprach: «swelch vrowe ist hôchgemuot
I spoke: «whichever lady is high-spirited

mit zühten und ist dar zuo guot,
with courtesies and is there to good,

diu muoz der êren krône tragen
she must the honors' crown bear

von grôzem reht bî iren tagen.
by great right in her days.

swelch wîp bî schœne güete hât,
whichever woman with beauty goodness has,

der lop von schulden hôhe stât.
her praise by rights high stands.

Swelch frowe hôchgemüete treit, 1755
Whichever lady high-spirit bears,

dâ bî güete, daz ist ein kleit,
there by goodness, that is a dress,

daz vrowe noch pezzer nie getruoc.
that lady yet better never wore.

und ist ez guot? jâ, guot genuoc:
and is it good? yes, good enough:

sô guot, daz man mir des muoz jehen,
so good, that one me of-that must declare,

daz pezzer kleit wart nie gesehen.
that better dress was never seen.

swelch vrowen manz siht oft an tragen,
whichever lady one-it sees often on wear,

diu hât vil hôhe lop bî ir tagen.
she has very high praise in her days.

Und hât ein vrowe niht schœne vil, 1756
And (if)-has a lady not beauty much,

diu gern güete an tragen wil,
who gladly goodness on wear will,

ir varbe doch man schœne giht,
her color yet one beautiful declares,

sô mans die güete an tragen siht.
when one-her the goodness on wear sees.

ir sult für wâr gelouben daz:
you shall for true believe that:

niht kleider stât den vrowen baz,
no clothes become the ladies better,

danne die si von der güete treit:
than those she from the goodness wears:

daz sint êrenberndiu kleit.
those are honor-bearing clothes.

1757 Diu güete vrowen schône an stât
The goodness ladies beautifully on stands

für allez, daz diu werlt hât.
before all, that the world has.

diu schœne kleidet vrowen wol:
the beauty clothes ladies well:

ob ich die wârheit sprechen sol,
if I the truth speak shall,

sô kleidet si güete verre baz.
so clothes them goodness far better.

ir sult für wâr gelouben daz:
you shall for true believe that:

swelch vrowe schœne âne güete hât,
whichever lady beauty without goodness has,

der ist der lîp vol missetât.
to-her is the person full of-misdeed.

Ez wart nie wîp sô wol getân, 1758
It was never woman so well made,

ist ir der lîp gar güete ân,
(if)-is to-her the person wholly goodness without,

daz iemen wîser lobe ir lîp.
that anyone wiser praise her person.

dâ man durch güete lobt guotiu wîp,
where one for goodness praises good women,

dâ muoz si sunder êre sîn,
there must she without honor be,

swie minneclîch doch sî ir schîn.
however lovely yet be her shine.

und ist ir schœne niht güete bî,
and (if)-is to-her beauty no goodness by,

si muoz sîn immer lobes vrî.
she must be ever of-praise free.

Güete zieret vrowen schîn, 1759
Goodness adorns ladies' shine,

reht als daz golt tuot den rubîn,
right as the gold does the ruby,

und als die sunne tuot den tac.
and as the sun does the day.

für wâr ich daz wol sprechen mac:
for true I that well speak may:

swelch frowe schœne bî güete hât
whichever lady beauty with goodness has

und ir der munt kuslîchen stât,
and to-her the mouth kissable stands,

der kuslîch, süeze, rôter munt
the kissable, sweet, red mouth

tuot mannes hertze seuften kunt.
makes man's heart sighing known.

1760 Nu wolde got, daz guotiu wîp
Now would God, that good women
in mannes hertze durch den lîp
into man's heart through the body
bescheidenlîchen möhten sehen
discerningly might see
und dar inne möhten wol gespehen
and there in might well espy
valschen muot und stæticheit!
false spirit and steadfastness!
sô wære ir manigiu niht bereit
so were of-them many-a-one not ready
ir süezen minne valschen man:
their sweet love to-false men:
des ich niht guoten wîben gan.
which I not to-good women grant.

1761 Valscher manne der ist nu vil:
Of-false men there is now many:
dâ von ich den wîben wil
there from I to-the women will
râten, daz si wizzen, wem
counsel, that they know, to-whom
si minne geben, daz in wol zem,
they love give, that them well befit,
dâ ir êre sî behuot.
where their honor be guarded.
der manne ist vil gar ungemuot:
of-the men is many wholly ill-spirited:
dâ von sô sol ein ieslîch wîp
there from so shall an each woman
ze snelle niht geben hin ir lîp.
too quickly not give away her person.

Swelch wîp sich einem biderben man 1762
Whichever woman herself to-a worthy man

gît, der sich bedenken kan,
gives, who himself consider can,

diu mac wol wesen hôchgemuot:
she may well be high-spirited:

ir êre ist immer wol behuot.
her honor is ever well guarded.

tuot sî güetlîch den willen sîn,
(if)-does she kindly the will his,

sô hab daz ûf die triwe mîn:
so have that on the faithfulness mine:

ir êre er besorget wol,
her honor he cares-for well,

als er von grôzzem rehte sol.
as he by great right shall.

Swelch wîp ir êre lât den pflegen, 1763
Whichever woman her honor lets him tend,

der selbe sîn êre lât under wegen,
who self his honor leaves under ways,

der êre mac wol twerhes varn,
the honor may well crosswise fare,

swenne er sîn êre niht kan bewarn.
whenever he his honor not can keep.

wil sî ir êre gar an den lân,
(if)-will she her honor wholly on him leave,

des lîp selbe êre nie gewan,
whose person self honor never won,

sô vert ir êre die irrevart,
so goes her honor the wrong-way,

swanne er sîn êre niht hât bewart.
whenever he his honor not has kept.

1764 Ein wîp ir êre sol an den lân,
A woman her honor shall on him leave,

der lop und êre bedenken kan.
who praise and honor consider can.

ir êre ist immer wol behuot:
her honor is ever well guarded:

wan er mit triwen alz daz tuot,
for he with faithfulness all that does,

dâ sich ir êre mêret mit.
where itself her honor increases with.

ez ist für wâr guot wîbes sit,
it is for true good woman's custom,

daz sî ir êre lât an den man,
that she her honor leaves on the man,

der lop und êre bedenken kan.
who praise and honor consider can.

1765 Ist daz mîn dinc als wol ergât,
(If)-is that my thing so well goes,

daz sich mîn vrowe ihts an mich lât,
that herself my lady anything on me lets,

des sol ich ir mit triwen pflegen
of-that shall I her with faithfulness take-care

und solz niht lâzen under wegen.
and shall-it not leave under ways.

ich wils ir pflegen naht unde tac
I will-it for-her tend night and day

mit triwen, als ich beste mac.
with faithfulness, as I best may.

den tôt ich willeclîch ê kür,
the death I willingly sooner would-choose,

ê sî ir êre von mir verlür.
before she her honor through me lost.

Ich wil ir êren und der mîn 1766
I will her honor and the mine

mit willen immer hüetende sîn
with will ever guarding be

mit triwen, als ich beste kan.
with faithfulness, as I best can.

ich bin ir stæter dienestman
I am her steadfast vassal

mit triwen unz an mînen tôt:
with faithfulness until to my death:

dâ von mich bringet nimmer nôt;
there from me brings never distress;

ich diene ir immer sunder wanc.»
I serve her ever without wavering.»

dâ von ich disiu liet ouch sanc:
there from I these songs also sang:

LI.
LI.

Ich wil durch die vrouwen mîn
I will for the lady mine

guoten wîben râten einen rât,
to-good women counsel a counsel,

Daz sie vrô mit zühten sîn.
That they glad with courtesies be.

zuht bî freuden vrouwen schône stât.
courtesy with joys ladies beautifully stands.

Swelch wîp ist mit zühten hôch gemuot,
Whichever woman is with courtesies high spirited,

diu hât êren vil, und ist sie guot.
she has honors much, and (if)-is she good.

Güetlîch sol ein ieslîch wîp
Kindly shall an each woman

gerne tuon: dêswâr daz wîbet wol.
gladly do: truly that womans well.

Diu wol kleiden wil ir lîp,
Who well clothe will her person,

diu sol tuon ir herze güete vol.
she shall make her heart of-goodness full.

Güete ist ein daz beste wîbes kleit,
Goodness is alone the best woman's dress,

daz an vrouwen lîp wart ie geleit.
that on lady's person was ever laid.

Swelch wîp güetlîch lachen kan,
Whichever woman kindly laugh can,

schôn mit zühten, hât diu rôten munt,
beautifully with courtesies, (if)-has she red mouth,

Diu mac einem werden man
She may to-a worthy man

siuften bringen ûz des herzen grunt.
sighing bring out-of the heart's ground.

Guot gebærde vrouwen schône stât.
Good bearing ladies beautifully stands.

wol ir, diu bî schœne güete hât!
well her, who with beauty goodness has!

Swâ ein guot wîp minnen wil,
Wherever a good woman love will,

diu sol minnen, daz ir rehte zeme.
she shall love, what her rightly befits.

Valscher manne derst nu vil:
Of-false men there-is now many:

dâ von sol bedenken, wen sie neme:
there from shall consider, whom she take:

Der ir êren hüete und stæte sî,
Who her honor guard and steadfast be,

sô daz er gein ir sî wankes vrî.
so that he toward her be of-wavering free.

Swelch man sich vor missetât
Whichever man himself from misdeed

hât behuot und immer hüeten wil,
has guarded and ever guard will,

Swâ ein wîp sich an den lât,
Wherever a woman herself on him lets,

der lîp darf gesorgen nimmer vil.
her person needs care never much.

Erst ir êren vrô: daz weiz ich wol.
He-is of-her honor glad: that know I well.

biderbe man guot wîp bedenken sol.
worthy man good woman consider shall.

Ein guot wîp diu solde die
A good woman she should them

haben liep, die manlîch sint gemuot.
have dear, who manly are spirited.

Swer nie grôze untât begie,
Whoever never great misdeed committed,

der ist werdem wîb ze friunde guot.
he is to-worthy woman as friend good.

Swelch man sîner êren hüeten kan,
Whichever man his honor guard can,

an den sol ein wîp ir êre lân.
on him shall a woman her honor leave.

Swes mîn vrou sich an mich lât,
Whatever my lady herself on me lets,

des pflig ich ir, sô ich beste kan.
of-that take-care I for-her, as I best can.

Ich begie nie missetât
I committed never misdeed

gegen ir: valschen muot ich nie gewan.
toward her: false spirit I never won.

Siest mir lieber dan mîn selbes lîp.
She-is to-me dearer than my own person.

dêst mîn reht: sie ist ein wîplîch wîp.
that-is my right: she is a womanly woman.

XV · GOODNESS FOR COLOR

Ulrich vows to praise women and sings Song LII. The best color a lady can paint herself with, he says, is goodness, without which beauty earns no praise, and he sings Song LIII. He claims that he can see into ladies' hearts, and likens a beautiful woman without goodness to a flower without scent.

1767 Swer frowen hulde wil bejagen,
Whoever ladies' favor will win,

der sol singen unde sagen
he shall sing and tell

ir lop, ir hôhe werdecheit
their praise, their high worthiness

vil willeclîchen machen breit
very willingly make broad

mit rehten triwen alle zît.
with right faithfulness all time.

ir lop vil hôchgemüete gît,
their praise very high-spirit gives,

ir lop daz tuot den biderben wol
their praise that does to-the worthy-ones good

und reiniu hertze freuden vol.
and pure hearts of-joys full.

Ein ieslîch man den frowen sol 1768
An each man of-the ladies shall

von grôzzem rehte sprechen wol.
by great right speak well.

ir lop den biderben sanfte tuot,
their praise to-the worthy-ones gently does,

ir lop daz gît vil hôhen muot,
their praise that gives very high spirit,

ir lop daz bringet werdecheit.
their praise that brings worthiness.

man sol in dienstes sîn bereit
one shall to-them of-service be ready

mit gantzen triwen sunder wanc:
with whole faithfulness without wavering:

si habent hôhen habedanc.
they have high thanks.

Ich wil der lieben vrowen mîn 1769
I will to-the dear lady mine

mit dienst immer stæte sîn.
with service ever steadfast be.

des hân ich reht: si tuot mir sô,
of-that have I right: she does to-me so,

daz ich bin ze allen zîten frô.
that I am at all times glad.

ir kleinvelheizzerôter munt
her small-skinned-hot-red mouth

tuot mir vil hôchgemüete kunt.
makes me very high-spirit known.

mir getet nie niht sô rehte wol
to-me did never anything so rightly well

sô daz, swanne ich si sehen sol.
as that, whenever I her see shall.

1770 Si hât mîn werndiu stæticheit
Her has my lasting steadfastness

sô in daz hertze mîn geleit,
so into the heart mine laid,

daz sî dar ûz kumt nimmer mê:
that she there out-of comes never more:

si benimt mir dâ vil gar mîn wê.
she takes from-me there very wholly my woe.

ir güet, ir minneclîcher schîn
her goodness, her lovely shine

mich heizzent hôhes muotes sîn.
me bid of-high spirit be.

si vertrîbet dâ al mîn trûren mir:
she drives-away there all my sadness from-me:

dâ von sô muoz ich dienen ir
there from so must I serve her

1771 Mit triwen an mîn endes zil.
With faithfulness until my end's goal.

und möht ich ir gedienen vil,
and might I her serve much,

des wær ich ir gar undertân.
of-that were I to-her wholly subject.

ich bin ir stæter dienestman.
I am her steadfast vassal.

des hân ich reht: si ist mir guot.
of-that have I right: she is to-me good.

ir güete mir vil sanfte tuot:
her goodness to-me very gently does:

si tuot mich ze allen zîten vrô.
she makes me at all times glad.

ich sange ir liet, diu sprâchen sô:
I sang her songs, they spoke so:

LII.
LII.

Wol her alle, helfet singen
Well hither all, help sing

wîbes lop, daz ich ie gerne sanc!
woman's praise, which I ever gladly sang!

Tuot mir daz, iu mac gelingen,
Do to-me that, to-you may succeed,

swie mir noch nie wol an in gelanc.
however to-me yet never well with them succeeded.

Doch geloubet, daz ir twingen
Yet believe, that their compelling

biderben man ûf hôhen muot ie twanc.
worthy man to high spirit ever compelled.

Man sol vrouwen wol gedenken:
One shall ladies well remember:

swer daz tuot, daz ist ein guot gedanc;
whoever that does, that is a good thought;

Unde in dienen sunder wenken:
And them serve without wavering:

des wirt wol gelônet sunder wanc.
of-that is well rewarded without wavering.

Niemen sols mit worten krenken:
No-one shall-them with words lessen:

wan ir lop kan nimmer werden kranc.
for their praise can never become weak.

Man siht mich in hôhem muote:
One sees me in high spirit:

durch ein wîp bin ich vil hôchgemuot.
for a woman am I very high-spirited.

Diu vil reine, süeze, guote
The very pure, sweet, good-one

ist envollen schœne und dar zuo guot.
is in-full beautiful and there to good.

Ir guot wîplîch êren huote
Her good womanly honors' guarding

hât ir lîp vor wandel wol behuot.
has her person from blemish well guarded.

Wol ir kleinvelrôtem munde!
Well her small-skinned-red mouth!

immer sælic sî ir süezer munt!
ever blessed be her sweet mouth!

Solde ich den in kurzer stunde
Should I it in short hour

küssen hundert tûsent, tûsent stunt,
kiss hundred thousand, thousand times,

Swanne ichs in dem willen funde,
Whenever I-her in the will found,

daz wær mîner hôhen freuden funt.
that were of-my high joys find.

Tugende hân ich an ir funden,
Virtues have I in her found,

mêr dann ich ir ie an wîbe vant.
more than I of-them ever in woman found.

Dâ von bin ich ir gebunden:
There from am I to-her bound:

minne mich ir mit der stæte bant.
love me to-her with the steadfastness bound.

Des ist trûren mir verswunden:
Of-that is sadness from-me vanished:

von ir grôzen güete mir daz swant.
from her great goodness to-me that vanished.

Diu liet diu waren meisterlîch 1772
The songs they were masterly

unde ir rîm gar sinnerîch;
and their rhyme wholly sense-rich;

dâ von sî gern maniger sanc.
there from them gladly many-a-one sang.

diu wîs was für wâr niht lanc:
the tune was for true not long:

ze tanzen wâren sî vil guot:
to dance were they very good:

der dôn diu leute tet hôchgemuot.
the tune the people made high-spirited.

für wâr ich iu daz sagen wil:
for true I you that tell will:

si wurden oft getanzet vil.
they were often danced much.

1773 Nâch disen lieden gedâht mîn lîp,
After these songs thought my person,

swâ sich clâr machen wold ein wîp,
wherever herself bright make would a woman,

daz sî wære immer wol getân.
that she were ever well made.

dar nâch ich denken vast began;
there after I think fast began;

ich gedâht: «ich weiz niht varbe mê,
I thought: «I know no color more,

diu vrowen alsô schôn an stê
which ladies so beautifully on stands

alsô güete: swelch vrowe di an
as goodness: whichever lady it on

strîchet, diu ist gar wolgetân.
paints, she is wholly well-made.

1774 Die varbe gerne mac ein wîp
The color gladly may a woman

under strîchen, daz ir lîp
under paint, that her person

tuot sô rehte minneclîch,
makes so rightly lovely,

daz sî dâ von ist êren rîch.
that she there from is of-honors rich.

nie vrowen varbe wart sô guot
never ladies' color was so good

als guot gebærde und güetlîch muot,
as good bearing and kindly spirit,

getempert mit der stæticheit.
tempered with the steadfastness.

wol ir, swelch vrowe die varbe treit!
well her, whichever lady the color bears!

Von grôzer schœne wirt ein lîp 1775
From great beauty becomes a person

sunder güete niht wîplîch wîp.
without goodness not womanly woman.

und ist ir schœne niht güete bî,
and (if)-is to-her beauty no goodness by,

sô muoz si sîn des lobes vrî,
so must she be of-the praise free,

daz man iht spreche: «si ist wîplîch.»
that one anything speak: «she is womanly.»

ein guot wîp wirt lobes rîch,
a good woman becomes of-praise rich,

der hertze wîplîch güete hât;
whose heart womanly goodness has;

des man die schœnen gar erlât.
of-that one the beautiful-one wholly spares.

Von güete wirt ein arme wîp 1776
From goodness becomes a poor woman

wol vrowe und dar zuo wîplîch lîp.
well lady and there to womanly person.

diu rîche des niht werden kan
the rich-one of-it not become can

sunder güete; swie wol getân
without goodness; however well made

und swie edel sî ir lîp,
and however noble be her person,

si ist iedoch niht wîplîch wîp.
she is yet not womanly woman.

sô man si sunder güete siht,
when one her without goodness sees,

sô hât si hôhes lobes niht.
so has she of-high praise nothing.

1777 Swâ biderbem manne sô wol geschiht,
Wherever to-worthy man so well happens,

daz er ein edel vrowen siht,
that he a noble lady sees,

der lîp güetlîchen wîplîch tuot,
whose person kindly womanly does,

der mac wol wesen hôchgemuot.
he may well be high-spirited.

der hôchgeboren wîplîch lîp
the high-born womanly person

ist wol ein vrowe und wîplîch wîp:
is well a lady and womanly woman:

swen diu siht zeimâle an,
whomever she looks once at,

der ist ein sælden sælic man.
he is a of-blisses blessed man.

1778 Ich weiz wol, mîner vrowen lîp
I know well, my lady's person

der ist ein frowe und wîplîch wîp:
it is a lady and womanly woman:

er ist schœne, güetlîchen guot,
it is beautiful, kindly good,

er ist wîplîch gar gemuot.
it is womanly wholly spirited.

sîn lop von schulden hôhe stât,
its praise by rights high stands,

wan er vil manige tugende hât.
for it very many virtues has.

ich bin sîn an ze sehen vrô.»
I am of-it at to see glad.»

ich sange im liet, diu sprâchen sô:
I sang it songs, they spoke so:

LIII.
LIII.

Vliuch, vliuch, trûren von uns verre
Flee, flee, sadness from us far

ûz dem lande balde!
out-of the land quickly!

Hôher muot, dîn rehter herre,
High spirit, thy right lord,

der kumt mit gewalde. junge und alde
he comes with power. young and old

Hebt unhôhe, swar du kêrest,
Lift not-high, wherever thou turnest,

sît du niemen êrest.
since thou no-one honorest.

Hôher muot der bringet êre
High spirit it brings honor

uns von wîbes güete.
to-us from woman's goodness.

Erst gar aller tugende lêre:
He-is wholly of-all virtue teaching:

got in uns behüete! hôchgemüete
God him for-us guard! high-spirit

Lêret frouwen dienen schône
Teaches ladies serve beautifully

nâch ir süezem lône.
after their sweet reward.

Wil ein vrouwe schœne belîben
(If)-will a lady beautiful remain

gerne stæticlîchen,
gladly steadfastly,

Diu sol sich mit güete rîben,
She shall herself with goodness rub,

stæt vast understrîchen. êren rîchen
steadfast fast under-paint. of-honors rich

Muoz sie von den varwen immer:
Must she from the colors ever:

sie verderbent nimmer.
they perish never.

Wîp und froun in einer wæte
Woman and lady in one garment

sol man gerne schouwen.
shall one gladly behold.

Swâ ein vrou unwîplîch tæte,
Wherever a lady unwomanly did,

wer möht der getrouwen? werden vrouwen
who might to-her trust? to-worthy ladies

Stât wol, daz sie güetlîch güeten
Stands well, that she kindly treat-with-kindness

unde ir êren hüeten.
and her honor guard.

Guoten wîben wil ich immer
To-good women will I ever

dienen sunder wenken.
serve without wavering.

Von dem muote kum ich nimmer.
From the spirit come I never.

wie möht ich gedenken sie ze krenken,
how might I think them to lessen,

Sît an in stât al mîn êre
Since on them stands all my honor

unde an niemen mêre?
and on no-one more?

Mîn lîp muoz von einem wîbe
My person must from a woman

hôher freuden rîchen.
of-high joys rich.

Ir vil reinem, süezem lîbe
To-her very pure, sweet person

kan ich niht gelîchen endelîchen.
can I nothing liken truly.

Siest diu beste in mînem muote
She-is the best in my spirit

und für wâr diu guote.
and for true the good-one.

In des herzen grunde schône
In the heart's ground beautifully

blüet mir hôchgemüete:
blooms to-me high-spirit:

Daz gît mir ir lîp ze lône
That gives me her person as reward

mit ir süezen güete. got behüete
with her sweet goodness. God guard

Mir ir lîp, ir schœne, ir êre!
For-me her person, her beauty, her honor!

siest mîn freuden lêre.
she-is my joys' teaching.

1779 Dô disiu liet gesungen vil
When these songs sung much

wurden, für wâr ich iu wil
were, for true I you will

sagen, daz ich gedâhte dô:
tell, that I thought then:

ich gedâhte sus, ich gedâhte sô:
I thought thus, I thought so:

ich gedâht an diu vil reinen wîp,
I thought of the very pure women,

der selten ie vergaz mîn lîp:
whom seldom ever forgot my person:

ich gedâht ir heinlîch gar ze spehen
I thought their secret wholly to espy

und in ir hertzen grunt ze sehen.
and into their heart's ground to see.

1780 Ich gedâht: «si mügen daz niht bewarn,
I thought: «they may that not keep,

ich welle ir heinlîch alle ervarn,
I will their secret all learn,

und wil ouch al ir tugende spehen.
and will also all their virtues espy.

ich wil in in diu hertze sehen
I will them into the hearts see

beidiu durch kleider und durch lîp.
both through clothes and through body.

sich kan vor mir bewarn dehein wîp:
herself can from me keep no woman:

sît ich die wârheit sprechen sol,
since I the truth speak shall,

ich ervar ir heinlîch alle wol.
I learn their secret all well.

Ich kan in alsô nâhen sehen, 1781
I can them so near see,

daz ichs ungern gar wolde jehen.
that I-it unwillingly wholly would declare.

swelch wîp ich wil gern sehen an,
whichever woman I will gladly look at,

vor mir diu niht verhelen kan.
from me she nothing hide can.

sî sî übel oder guot,
she be ill or good,

swie ir lîp danne ist gemuot,
however her person then is spirited,

daz wirt mir vollecl îchen kunt:
that becomes to-me fully known:

ich sihe ir in ir hertzen grunt.
I see her into her heart's ground.

Swer gerne frowen schœne siht 1782
Whoever gladly ladies' beauty sees

unde ir güete wil merken niht,
and their goodness will notice not,

der schouwet wan ir liehten schîn
he beholds but their bright shine

als einer, der schœniu blüemickîn
as one, who beautiful little-flowers

brichet durch ir liehten glantz
breaks for their bright gleam

und dar ûz machet einen krantz:
and there out-of makes a wreath:

und sint diu danne niht wol gesmach,
and (if)-are they then not well smelling,

in riuwet, daz ers ie gebrach.
him rues, that he-them ever broke.

1783 Swer wurtze und krût bekennen kan
Whoever roots and herbs know can

und bluomen art, der lât die stân,
and flowers' kind, he lets them stand,

die süezes smackes habent niht;
which sweet scent have not;

dâ bî man in gern brechen siht
there by one him gladly break sees

bluomen, die von hôher art
flowers, which of high kind

mit süezem smacke sint bewart.
with sweet scent are guarded.

bluomen schœne, di smeckent wol,
flowers beautiful, which smell well,

vil gern ein man die brechen sol.
very gladly a man them break shall.

1784 Swelch bluome iht süezes smackes hât,
Whichever flower anything of-sweet scent has,

der smac gar ûz ir wurzen gât.
the scent wholly out-of its roots goes.

swaz man schœner bluomen siht,
whatever one of-beautiful flowers sees,

und habent sie edeler wurzen niht,
and (if)-have they noble roots not,

si habent ouch niht süezen wâz.
they have also no sweet fragrance.

ir sult für wâr gelauben daz:
you shall for true believe that:

swâ sprichet süeziu wort ein munt,
wherever speaks sweet words a mouth,

der munt hât reines hertzen grunt.
the mouth has pure heart's ground.

Swelch wîp sich schamt gar missetât, 1785
Whichever woman herself shames wholly misdeed,

der lîp hât reines hertzen rât.
the person has pure heart's counsel.

ein man, der vrowen gerne siht,
a man, who ladies gladly sees,

der sol sich lân betrâgen niht:
he shall himself let weary not:

er sol vrâgen unde sehen,
he shall ask and see,

beidiu merken unde spehen,
both notice and espy,

ob sî sîn übel oder guot,
whether they be ill or good,

und wie ir hertze sî gemuot.
and how their heart be spirited.

Ich wil iu allen machen kunt, 1786
I will you all make known,

wie mîn lîp in ir hertzen grunt
how my person into their heart's ground

ze allen zîten schône siht:
at all times beautifully sees:

des wil ich iuch verswîgen niht.
of-that will I you keep-silent not.

ich kan vrâgen unde sehen,
I can ask and see,

ich kan merken unde spehen:
I can notice and espy:

mit disen dingen ich hie mit
with these things I here with

ervar vil gar ir hertzen sit.
learn very wholly their heart's custom.

1787 Ich bin gein in gar triwen vol
I am toward them wholly faithfulness full

und erkenne an ir gebærden wol
and know by their bearing well

ir übel, ir güete, ir stæticheit.
their ill, their goodness, their steadfastness.

mir wær daz hertzenlîchen leit,
to-me were that heartily sorrow,

und spræche in iemen baz danne ich:
and spoke of-them anyone better than I:

des wolde ich immer schamen mich.
of-that would I ever shame myself.

ir lop von rehte ich sprechen sol,
their praise by right I speak shall,

wan ich bekenne ir tugende wol.
for I know their virtues well.

1788 Si sint vil hôher tugende rîch:
They are very of-high virtues rich:

ir tugende bekenne ich stæticlîch.
their virtues know I steadfastly.

swanne ich gedenke, waz diu wîp
whenever I think, what the women

tugende hânt, sô wirt mîn lîp
virtues have, so becomes my person

sô reiniclîchen wol gemuot,
so purely well spirited,

daz mir niht alsô sanfte tuot,
that me nothing so gently does,

sô daz ich lobe ir werdecheit,
as that I praise their worthiness,

der got hât vil an sî geleit.
which God has much on them laid.

Ulrich praises the virtues of women and of his lady, and sings Song LIV, on seeing into women's hearts. A pure woman's heart, he says, is a heaven on earth, which no wicked man may enter, and he would rather dwell in his lady's than in paradise. He sings Song LV and longs to kiss her mouth a hundred thousand times.

Für wâr ich iu daz sagen wil: 1789
For true I you that tell will:

ir süezen tugende ist sô vil,
their sweet virtues is so many,

swanne ich ir tugende betrahte gar,
whenever I their virtues consider wholly,

daz man mich siht sâ minnevar.
that one me sees at-once love-colored.

mir getet für wâr nie niht sô wol
to-me did for true never anything so well

sô daz, swanne ich si loben sol.
as that, whenever I them praise shall.

ir lop gît mir vil hôhen muot:
their praise gives me very high spirit:

ez ist mir gar für trûren guot.
it is to-me wholly for sadness good.

Swanne ich gedenke: waz si tugent 1790
Whenever I think: what they virtue

hânt, sô blüet mir freuden jugent
have, so blooms to-me of-joys youth

und stîget sâ daz hertze mîn
and climbs at-once the heart mine

hôhe ûf für der sunnen schîn,
high up before the sun's shine,

so si hôhe in ir hœhe stât.
when she high in her height stands.

mîn lîp gein in die liebe hât,
my person toward them the love has,

sô ich betraht ir werdecheit,
when I consider their worthiness,

daz mir verswindet gar mîn leit.
that to-me vanishes wholly my sorrow.

1791 Ich wil si immer lobende sîn.
I will them ever praising be.

mir hât diu süeze vrowe mîn
to-me has the sweet lady mine

mit ir güete alsô getân,
with her goodness so done,

daz ich die kunst, die ich kan,
that I the skill, which I know,

ir sî lützel oder vil,
of-it be little or much,

gar mit ir dienst verswenden wil
wholly with her service use-up will

mit triwen, al di wil ich lebe,
with faithfulness, all the while I live,

ze dienest mîner freuden gebe.
to service of-my joys giver.

1792 Daz ist si lobesælic wîp,
That is she praise-blessed woman,

der immer dienen sol mîn lîp,
whom ever serve shall my person,

diu für wâr wandel nie gewan.
who for true blemish never won.

swaz wandels man genennen kan.
whatever of-blemish one name can.

des ist si alles ledicvrî.
of-that is she all wholly-free.

ir ist vil hôhe tugent bî:
to-her is very high virtue by:

des diene ich ir mit triuwen gar
of-that serve I her with faithfulness wholly

vil willeclîchen mîniu jâr.
very willingly my years.

Swaz tugent habent elliu wîp, 1793
Whatever virtue have all women,

der hât got an ir süezen lîp
of-them has God on her sweet person

für wâr sô rehte vil geleit,
for true so rightly much laid,

daz sî von rehte hât werdecheit.
that she by right has worthiness.

ir lîp dehein wandel nie gewan.
her person any blemish never won.

volloben ich sie nimmer kan:
praise-fully I her never can:

dâ ist mîn sin zuo gar ze kranc.»
there is my mind to wholly too weak.»

waz danne? diu liet ich ir doch sanc:
what then? the songs I her yet sang:

LIV.
LIV.

Wizzet alle, daz ich kan
Know all, that I can

guoten wîben in diu herzen sehen.
to-good women into the hearts see.

Swaz ir lîp hât kleider an,
Whatever their person has clothes on,

dar durch kan ich alle ir tugende spehen.
there through can I all their virtues espy.

Hât ein vrouwe missetât
(If)-has a lady misdeed

iender in ir herzen schrîn,
anywhere in her heart's shrine,

die tuont mir bekant diu ougen mîn.
that make me known the eyes mine.

Maneger vrouwen schœne siht,
Many-a-one ladies' beauty sees,

der doch nimt ir güete kleine war.
who yet takes of-their goodness little heed.

Der enbin ich einer niht:
Of-them am I one not:

ich kan alle ir tugende merken gar.
I can all their virtues notice wholly.

Sol den vrouwen iemen wol
(If)-shall of-the ladies anyone well

sprechen, daz sol tuon mîn munt:
speak, that shall do my mouth:

wan mir sint ir güete wunder kunt.
for to-me are their goodness wondrously known.

Mir sint alle ir tugende gar
To-me are all their virtues wholly

unde ir güete volleclîch bekant:
and their goodness fully known:

Dâ von hân ich drîzic jâr
There from have I thirty years

in ir dienste ritterlîch verswant.
in their service knightly used-up.

Hân ich iender missetân
(If)-have I anywhere misdone

gegen den guoten, dêst mir leit:
toward the good-ones, that-is to-me sorrow:

des bin ich ze buoze in vil bereit.
of-that am I to amends to-them very ready.

Wie ich in ir herzen grunt
How I into their heart's ground

alle ir tugende sunder müge sehen,
all their virtues separately may see,

Daz wil ich in machen kunt,
That will I them make known,

sô daz ir der wârheit müezet jehen.
so that you of-the truth must declare.

Mit gedanken ich ir sit
With thoughts I their custom

unde ir muot betrahte gar;
and their spirit consider wholly;

dâ mit ich ir heinlîch alle ervar.
there with I their secret all learn.

Swaz ein vrouwe tugende hât,
Whatever a lady virtues has,

diu muoz ûz ir herzen grunde gân,
they must out-of her heart's ground go,

Sam daz saf ûz wurzen gât
As the sap out-of roots goes

in vil manege bluomen wol getân.
into very many flowers well made.

Diu wîpheit muoz sîn getriu:
The womanhood must be faithful:

dâ von êret vrouwen lîp
there from honors ladies' person

daz, swâ man sie nennet wîplîch wîp.
that, wherever one them names womanly woman.

Ich hân mîner vrouwen lîp
I have my lady's person

unde ir herze vunden wandels vrî.
and her heart found of-blemish free.

Ichn gesach nie wîplîch wîp,
I saw never womanly woman,

der sô hôhe tugende wæren bî.
to-whom so high virtues were by.

In ir herzen kan mîn sin
In her heart can my mind

niht ervinden noch erspehen,
not find nor espy,

wan des man ir muoz für tugende jehen.
but what one to-her must for virtue declare.

Dô ich êrst ir rede vernam
When I first her speech heard

und ich in ir reinez herze sach,
and I into her pure heart saw,

Dâ vant ich zuht, wîplich scham.
There found I courtesy, womanly shame.

dâ von gihe ich noch, des ich dô jach,
there from declare I still, what I then declared,

Daz mir wîp geviel nie baz.
That me woman pleased never better.

sie ist kiusche, stæte, guot,
she is chaste, steadfast, good,

schœne, hôch geborn, wîplich gemuot.
beautiful, high born, womanly spirited.

Diu liet gevielen manigem wol. 1794
The songs pleased many-a-one well.

ich freu mich des nu, daz ich sol
I rejoice myself of-that now, that I shall

singen, sprechen minneclîch
sing, speak lovingly

von dem lebenden himelrîch:
of the living heaven's-kingdom:

daz sint diu vil reinen wîp.
that are the very pure women.

sælic immer sî ir lîp!
blessed ever be their person!

der lîp ir güetlîch einez treit,
the person of-them kindly one bears,

diu muoz gar sîn vor wandel meit.
which must wholly be from blemish free.

1795 Swâ sô ein hôch geboren wîp
Wherever so a high born woman
treit unwandelbæren lîp,
bears blameless person,
daz er ist guot und minneclîch,
that it is good and lovely,
der hertz ist wol ein himelrîch.
whose heart is well a heaven's-kingdom.
wan dar inne ist tugende vil:
for there in is of-virtues much:
die spilent dâ der minne spil,
they play there the love's game,
mit hôhen freuden alle zît
with high joys all time
habent sî dâ freuden hôchgezît.
have they there of-joys high-feast.

1796 Swelch wîp sô reinez hertze hât,
Whichever woman so pure heart has,
daz sich schamt aller missetât,
that itself shames of-all misdeed,
daz muoz wol sîn ein himelrîch:
that must well be a heaven's-kingdom:
nie niht enwart sô minneclîch.
never anything became so lovely.
swâ ein minnegerder man
wherever a love-desiring man
in daz hertze komen kan,
into the heart come can,
der hât hôher freuden vil
he has of-high joys much
immer an sîn endes zil.
ever until his end's goal.

Swelch hertze treit ein reinez wîp, 1797
Whichever heart bears a pure woman,

dar in kan nimmer mannes lîp
there into can never man's person

komen, der iht wandels hât:
come, who any blemish has:

er muoz sîn gar âne missetât,
he must be wholly without misdeed,

der komen wil in ir hertzen grunt.
who come will into her heart's ground.

jâ ist mir daz vil wol kunt,
yes is to-me that very well known,

daz in ir reinez hertze kan
that into her pure heart can

nimmer komen bœser man.
never come evil man.

Und solt si einen bœsen man 1798
And should she an evil man

in ir reinez hertze lân,
into her pure heart let,

dâ mit hûse von ir jugent
there with house from her youth

sint her gewesen al ir tugent,
are hither been all her virtues,

sô rûmten ez ir tugende sâ
so cleared it her virtues at-once

(daz weiz ich wol) vil snelle dâ:
(that know I well) very quickly there:

ja beliben sî bî im dâ niht:
yes remained they by him there not:

daz wær ein schedelîch geschiht.
that were a harmful happening.

1799 An hôhen êren ez in frumt,
In high honors it him profits,

der in ein wîbes hertze kumt,
who into a woman's heart comes,

dar inne wîplîch tugende sint.
there in womanly virtues are.

tugende vater, pruoder, kint:
virtues father, brother, child:

al die tugende, die got ie
all the virtues, which God ever

in dehein hertze komen lie
into any heart come let

durch deheines menschen lîp,
for any human's person,

die treit dîn hertze, wîplîch wîp.
them bears thy heart, womanly woman.

1800 Ich weiz daz gar endelîch,
I know that wholly truly,

daz in daz rehte himelrîch
that into the right heaven's-kingdom

niemen kumt, der sünde hât
no-one comes, who sin has

und âne buoze dehein missetât.
and without penance any misdeed.

sô ist dem selben himelrîch
so is to-the same heaven's-kingdom

ein wîbes hertze wol gelîch,
a woman's heart well like,

diu dar in niht komen lât
which there into nothing come lets

des, daz ir êren missestât.
of-that, which to-her honors misbecomes.

Mîn vrowe ist sô gemuot ein wîp, 1801
My lady is so spirited a woman,

daz ir vil tugende rîcher lîp
that her very of-virtues rich person

ein alsô reinez hertze hât,
a so pure heart has,

daz dar în kom nie missetât.
that there into came never misdeed.

dar inne ist hôher tugende vil:
there in is of-high virtues much:

die spilent dâ der minne spil.
they play there the love's game.

in dem hertzen der vrowen mîn
in the heart of-the lady mine

wold ich vil gern gesinde sîn.
would I very gladly household be.

Hôhe tugende alle zît 1802
High virtues all time

habent freuden hôchgezît
have joys' high-feast

in ir hertzen wandels vrî:
in her heart of-blemish free:

dâ wære ich ofte gerne bî.
there were I often gladly by.

und solt ich dâ gesinde sîn,
and should I there household be,

sô wære ich ûf die triwe mîn
so were I on the faithfulness mine

sô gern niht deheine wîs
so gladly not in-any way

in dem vil schœnen paradîs.
in the very beautiful paradise.

1803 Ich wær für wâr gesinde dâ
I were for true household there

gerner danne iendert anderswâ.
more-gladly than anywhere elsewhere.

sît sî dar în niht swaches lât,
since she there into nothing base lets,

gewünne ich dâ danne mîne stat,
won I there then my place,

sô würd ichz, der ichz noch niht bin.
so became I-it, what I-it yet not am.

und lât ir güete mich dar in,
and (if)-lets her goodness me there in,

ob daz mîn lîp verdienen kan,
if that my person earn can,

waz ich danne immer freuden hân!
what I then ever of-joys have!

1804 Ich wil dar dienen mîniu jâr.
I will thither serve my years.

got gebe, daz ich kom schire dar,
God grant, that I come soon thither,

hin dâ ir reinez hertze treit
thither where her pure heart bears

kiusche, triwe, stæticheit,
chastity, faithfulness, steadfastness,

guot gebærde und senfte site!
good bearing and gentle manner!

den wolde ich gerne wonen mite.
them would I gladly dwell with.

ich vinde ouch zuht und güete dâ
I find also courtesy and goodness there

vil mêr danne iender anderswâ.
very more than anywhere elsewhere.

Und solde ich bî den tugenden sîn 1805
And should I by the virtues be

gesinde, wer wær der lîp mîn?
household, who were the person mine?

er wær ôt freuden rîche,
it were just of-joys rich,

den engeln vil gelîche:
to-the angels very like:

sunder trûren wold ich leben.
without sadness would I live.

wil mir diu guote hûs dâ geben,
(if)-will me the good-one house there give,

sô bin ich aller der genôz,
so am I of-all those companion,

die immer habent freude grôz.
who ever have joy great.

Mir tuot vil hertzenlîchen wol, 1806
To-me does very heartily good,

swenne ich die guoten sehen sol.
whenever I the good-one see shall.

ir kleinvelsüeze redenter munt
her small-skinned-sweet speaking mouth

tuot mir vil hôhe freude kunt.
makes me very high joy known.

ir spilender, liehter ougenschîn
her sparkling, bright eyes'-shine

tuot mir wol in dem hertzen mîn.
does me good in the heart mine.

ich bin si an ze sehen vrô.
I am her at to see glad.

ich sange ir liet, diu sprechent sô:
I sang her songs, they speak so:

LV.
LV.

Wol mich, wol mich, wol mich des, daz ich hân funden
Well me, well me, well me of-that, that I have found

ûf der erde ein himelrîch!
on the earth a heaven's-kingdom!

Dâ von ist mir al mîn trûren gar verswunden:
There from is to-me all my sadness wholly vanished:

nie niht wart sô wunneclîch.
never anything was so delightful.

Dâ ist gnâden alsô vil,
There is of-graces so much,

daz ich dar mit dienest immer werben wil.
that I thither with service ever strive will.

Mîner vrouwen tugentrîchez herze ich meine.
My lady's virtue-rich heart I mean.

daz ist sô gar wandels vrî
that is so wholly of-blemish free

Und für wâr sô rehte lûterlîche reine,
And for true so rightly purely clean,

daz im wont wan tugende bî.
that to-it dwell but virtues by.

Sælden hort dar inne lît:
Bliss's hoard there in lies:

dâ ist maneger hôhen freuden hôchgezît.
there is of-many high joys high-feast.

Wîplîch zuht und wîplîch güete sint dar inne,
Womanly courtesy and womanly goodness are there in,

kiusche, triuwe, stætikeit,
chastity, faithfulness, steadfastness,

Dar zuo wol gemuotes, werdes wîbes sinne.
There to well spirited, worthy woman's senses.

an daz herze hât geleit
on the heart has laid

Got sô minneclîchen lîp,
God so lovely person,

daz man sie von wârheit nennet wîplîch wîp.
that one her by truth names womanly woman.

Jâ muoz iemer mich von schulden wol belangen
Yes must ever me by rights well long

in daz reine himelrîch,
into the pure heaven's-kingdom,

Sît daz selbe süeze himelrîch bevangen
Since that same sweet heaven's-kingdom enclosed

hât ein lîp sô minneclîch,
has a person so lovely,

Der nie wandelmeil gewan:
Which never blame-stain won:

er ist kiusche, schœne, guot, lieplîch getân.
it is chaste, beautiful, good, lovely made.

Nie niht wart sô lieplîch schœne in mînen ougen
Never anything was so lovely beautiful in my eyes

als ir minneclîcher lîp.
as her lovely person.

Siest mir in dem herzen immer sunder lougen
She-is to-me in the heart ever without denial

lieber vil denn elliu wîp.
dearer much than all women.

Sie mac mir gelônen wol:
She may me reward well:

dâ von diene ich ir mit triuwen, als ich sol.
there from serve I her with faithfulness, as I shall.

Siest des herzen und des lîbes mîn gewaltic,
She-is of-the heart and of-the body mine mistress,

dar zuo alles, des ich hân.
there to of-all, that I have.

Sô ist mîn triuwe gegen ir alsô manicvaltic,
So is my faithfulness toward her so manifold,

daz ich ir baz guotes gan
that I her better of-good grant

Dan mir selben: dêst alsô.
Than me self: that-is so.

mich tuot ir güetlîch gebærde ofte vrô.
me makes her kindly bearing often glad.

Schouwet, wie der hûsen an der Tuonou grunde
Look, how the sturgeon in the Danube's ground

lebt des trôres süeze gar:
lives of-the dew sweet wholly:

Alsô lebt ich wol des luftes von ir munde
So lived I well of-the breath from her mouth

endelîchen mîniu jâr.
truly my years.

An ir stât mîn freuden leben:
On her stands my joys' life:

des hât sie mir mit ir güete wunder geben.
of-that has she me with her goodness wonder given.

Diu liet mit lobe vil hôhe stigen; 1807
The songs with praise very high climbed;

dar nâch von mir vil wart genigen
there after by me much was bowed

der hertzenlieben vrowen mîn,
to-the heart-dear lady mine,

der ich wil immer diende sîn.
whom I will ever serving be.

ir ist mîn dienest stæte bî.
to-her is my service steadfast by.

des hân ich reht: si ist wandels vrî,
of-that have I right: she is of-blemish free,

ir lîp begie nie missetât:
her person committed never misdeed:

dâ von ir lop vil hôhe stât.
there from her praise very high stands.

Solde ich ir kleinvelrôten munt 1808
Should I her small-skinned-red mouth

küssen hundert tûsent stunt,
kiss hundred thousand times,

daz wær gar mîner freuden hort:
that were wholly of-my joys hoard:

ich wolt dar in vil süeziu wort
I would there into very sweet words

küssen nâch dem willen mîn.
kiss after the will mine.

ich wil dar nâch ir diende sîn,
I will there after her serving be,

daz sîs mit willen gunne mir:
that she-it with will grant me:

dar umbe wil ich vil dienen ir.
there for will I much serve her.

Ulrich praises kissing, and the one thing better that he will not name, and tells how his heart leaps toward his lady. He sings Song LVI, then Song LVII, on wishing, and Song LVIII, on the wounds of love that his lady's sight and words heal. He warns ladies against men who deceive, and begins to name five things that make a lord glad.

1809 Ir munt hât rôsenvarben schîn:
Her mouth has rose-colored shine:

er mac wol innen süeze sîn.
it may well within sweet be.

dar ûz gât vil manic süeze wort:
there out-of goes very many-a sweet word:

dâ ligt ouch inne der freuden hort.
there lies also within the joys' hoard.

solde ich des dar ûz küssen vil,
should I of-that there out-of kiss much,

daz wær gar mînes hertzen spil
that were wholly my heart's game

und tæt mir verre baz danne wol;
and did me far better than well;

dar umbe ich gerne ir dienen sol.
there for I gladly her serve shall.

1810 Küssen ist ein süezez dinc,
Kissing is a sweet thing,

ez ist hôher freuden ein ursprinc:
it is of-high joys a source:

dâ reitzet minne mit ir spil,
there entices love with her game,

sô sî ir friunden lônen wil.
when she her friends reward will.

von friunden küssen sanfte tuot:
from friends kissing gently does:

man wirt dâ von vil hôchgemuot.
one becomes there from very high-spirited.

liep sîn liep vil küssen sol:
dear-one his dear-one much kiss shall:

ez tuot in hertzen grunde wol.
it does in heart's ground good.

Küssen hât sô grôzze kraft, 1811
Kissing has so great power,

daz man dâ mit süenet vîentschaft.
that one there with reconciles enmity.

küssen ist ein süezer sit:
kissing is a sweet custom:

sîn woltuon gât in ieslîch lit.
its well-doing goes into each limb.

ez tet für wâr nie niht sô wol
it did for true never anything so well

wan einez, daz man niht ensol
but one-thing, that one not shall

nennen: daz tuot verre baz.
name: that does far better.

ich nenne sîn niht: ir wizzet wol waz.
I name it not: you know well what.

Daz selbe süeze minnespil 1812
That same sweet love-game

hât süezes woltuons alsô vil,
has of-sweet well-doing so much,

daz sich im niht gelîchen kan.
that itself to-it nothing liken can.

des müezen mir jehen wîp unde man.
of-that must me declare woman and man.

sîn woltuon sô vil süeze hât,
its well-doing so much sweetness has,

daz ez vor allen dingen gât
that it before all things goes

mit der wolheit: daz ist alsô:
with the well-being: that is so:

ez tuot vil manic hertze vrô.
it makes very many-a heart glad.

1813 Der rede wil ich hie gedagen
Of-the speech will I here be-silent

und wil iu von mir selben sagen:
and will you of me self tell:

daz minnegernde hertze mîn
that love-desiring heart mine

wolt ze allen zîten gerne sîn
would at all times gladly be

bî mîner vrowen naht unde tac:
by my lady night and day:

vor gir ez niht geruowen mac,
for desire it not rest may,

ez gert als ein vederspil,
it desires like a hawk,

mit gir hât ez unmuoze vil.
with desire has it busyness much.

Und wirt ez sîner gir gewert, 1814
And (if)-is it of-its desire granted,

sô hât ez sæliclîch gegert:
so has it blessedly desired:

belîbet ez aber ungewert,
(if)-remains it however ungranted,

sô hât ez schedelîch gegert.
so has it harmfully desired.

sîn girde und ouch diu girde mîn
its desire and also the desire mine

die müezen beidiu sælic sîn,
they may both blessed be,

ob uns diu sælde beidiu wert,
if us the bliss both grants,

des unser wille mit triwen gert.
what our will with faithfulness desires.

Sîn gir ist hintze der guoten grôz. 1815
Its desire is toward the good-one great.

mit hôhen sprungen manigen stôz
with high leaps many-a thrust

an di brust ez stœzet mir:
at the breast it thrusts to-me:

vil gern ez wold sîn bî ir.
very gladly it would be by her.

ez wære gern in ir hertzen grunt:
it were gladly in her heart's ground:

daz tuot ez mir vil ofte kunt.
that makes it to-me very often known.

in dem vil süezen himelrîch
in the very sweet heaven's-kingdom

wær ez vil gern stæteclîch.
were it very gladly steadfastly.

1816 Als ez ersiht ir rôten munt,
When it sees her red mouth,

vor freuden an der selben stunt
for joys at the same hour

wolde ez sâ ûz dem lîbe mîn
would it at-once out-of the body mine

springen zuo der vrowen sîn:
spring to the lady its:

zuo ir ist aller sîn gelust.
to her is all its desire.

vil manigen stôz an mîne brust
very many-a thrust at my breast

stôzet ez mit hôhen sprüngen mir:
thrusts it with high leaps to-me:

vil gerne ez wolde sîn bî ir.
very gladly it would be by her.

1817 Von disen dingen lît ich nôt.
From these things suffer I distress.

minnen bleich und minne rôt,
of-love pale and of-love red,

der beider varbe man mich siht.
of-the both color one me sees.

mîn hertze lât mich ruowen niht,
my heart lets me rest not,

und ist doch hôchgemuot mîn lîp
and is yet high-spirited my person

durch daz vil reine, süeze wîp,
for the very pure, sweet woman,

diu mir ie hôchgemüete riet.
who to-me ever high-spirit counseled.

der sanc ze dienst ich disiu liet:
to-her sang to service I these songs:

LVI.
LVI.

Wîchet umbe! lât der guoten
Yield aside! let to-the good-one

nîgen mich, diu tugende hât:
bow me, who virtues has:

Der vil reiniclîch gemuoten
Of-the very purely spirited

lîp begie nie missetât.
person committed never misdeed.

Siest ein wîp gar wandels vrî:
She-is a woman wholly of-blemish free:

dâ von ist sie mir vil lieber, danne iht sî.
there from is she to-me very dearer, than anything be.

Zuo dem reinen, süezen wîbe
To the pure, sweet woman

wær daz sende herze mîn
were the longing heart mine

Ofte gerne ûz mînem lîbe:
Often gladly out-of my person:

bî der guoten wolde ez sîn.
by the good-one would it be.

Ez vert gegen ir spilende sô,
It goes toward her sparkling so,

sam ez hin zer süezen welle springen hô.
as it thither to-the sweet-one would spring high.

Sô die guote mich an lachet,
When the good-one me at laughs,

sô siht man mich minnevar.
so sees one me love-colored.

Sâ mîn herze sich ûf machet
At-once my heart itself up makes

und wil zuo ir springen dar.
and will to her spring thither.

Durch die brüst ist al sîn gir
Through the breast is all its desire

von der grôzen herzenliebe gegen ir.
from the great heart's-love toward her.

Solde ich der vil minneclîchen
Should I to-the very lovely-one

ein wort küssen in den munt,
a word kiss into the mouth,

Sô sæh man mich freuden rîchen
So would-see one me of-joys rich

hiute und immer zaller stunt.
today and ever at-all hours.

Ich wolt ez sô küssen dar,
I would it so kiss thither,

daz sie von dem kusse wurde minnevar.
that she from the kiss became love-colored.

Ich wolt ûz ir rôtem munde
I would out-of her red mouth

küssen, daz mir tæte wol
kiss, what me did good

Immer in des herzen grunde.
Ever in the heart's ground.

ir munt lît der süeze vol,
her mouth lies of-the sweetness full,

Diu für trûren freude gît:
Which for sadness joy gives:

wizzet, daz der in ir munde wunder lît.
know, that of-it in her mouth wonder lies.

Küssen ist der Minnen rôse,
Kissing is the Love's rose,

dâ sie reizet wunne mit,
where she entices delight with,

Sô sie mit der liebe lôse
When she with the love gracious

ist nâch ir vil süezem sît.
is after her very sweet custom.

Sô getet nie niht sô wol
So did never anything so well

wan daz eine, des man nennen niht ensol.
but the one-thing, which one name not shall.

Gerne ich von dem selben spræche,
Gladly I of the same would-speak,

waz ez wunne und freude gît.
what it delight and joy gives.

Ob ich mîne zuht niht bræche,
If I my courtesy not broke,

ich nantz freuden hôchgezît
I named-it joys' high-feast

Und der Minnen lôn: alsô,
And the Love's reward: so,

dazz vil manic reinez herze machet vrô.
that-it very many-a pure heart makes glad.

1818 Nâch disen lieden wart ich dô
After these songs became I then

von wünschen hertzenlîchen vrô.
from wishing heartily glad.

ich wart wol inne, daz wünschen tuot
I became well aware, that wishing does

vil wol: wan ez gît hôhen muot.
very well: for it gives high spirit.

ein man vil gerne wünschen sol:
a man very gladly wish shall:

ez tuot in hertzen grunde wol.
it does in heart's ground good.

...
(lacuna)

...
(lacuna)

LVII.
LVII.

Mîn muot der muoz stîgen iemer
My spirit it must climb ever

dâ von, daz mir wünschen tuot sô wol:
there from, that to-me wishing does so well:

Des wil ich getrûren niemer.
Of-that will I sorrow never.

mich tuot wünschen ofte freuden vol.
me makes wishing often of-joys full.

Dâ von wil ich gerne wünschen vil:
There from will I gladly wish much:

wan ich hân von süezen wünschen ofte wunnebernder freude spil.
for I have from sweet wishes often delight-bearing joy's game.

Mîn lîp der lac niulîch eine
My person it lay lately alone

unde wunschte nâch der frouwen mîn,
and wished after the lady mine,

Daz sie, diu vil süeze, reine
That she, the very sweet, pure-one

mit ir willen solde bî mir sîn.
with her will should by me be.

Von dem wunsche ein wunder mir geschach,
From the wish a wonder to-me happened,

daz ich die vil minneclîchen mit des herzen ougen bî mir sach.
that I the very lovely-one with the heart's eyes by me saw.

Dô ich sie mit wünschen brâhte
When I her with wishes brought

zuo mir alsô nâhe, ich wart frô.
to me so near, I became glad.

Alzehant mîn lîp gedâhte
Forthwith my person thought

mit ir freuden vil, sus unde sô.
with her of-joys much, thus and so.

Mir wart für wâr nie mêr alsô wol,
To-me was for true never more so well,

als mir dâ was mit der süezen: dâ von ich vil gerne wünschen sol.
as to-me there was with the sweet-one: there from I very gladly wish shall.

Zuo uns kam diu werde Minne
To us came the worthy Love

unde slôz uns beide vaste in ein.
and locked us both fast into one.

Ich und sie, wir wurden inne
I and she, we became aware

wol, wie minne flihtet arme und bein
well, how love braids arms and legs

Und wie sie gemachet, daz ein wîp
And how she makes, that a woman

und ein man von herzeclîcher liebe werdent niht niwan ein lîp.
and a man from heartfelt love become nothing but one body.

Swâ diu Minne zeinem lîbe
Wherever the Love into-one body

machet einen man und ein guot wîp,
makes a man and a good woman,

Wol dem manne, wol dem wîbe!
Well to-the man, well to-the woman!

daz muoz sîn ein minnesüezer lîp
that must be a love-sweet body

Und ein lîp, der mange wunne hât.
And a body, which many delight has.

ez ist gar ein himelrîche, dâ ein liep mit liebe umbe gât.
it is wholly a heaven's-kingdom, where a dear-one with dear-one about goes.

Ich bin alsô minnewîse
I am so love-wise

und ist mir sô rehte liep ein wîp,
and is to-me so rightly dear a woman,

Daz ich in dem paradîse
That I in the paradise

niht sô gerne wisse mînen lîp,
not so gladly knew my person,

Als dâ ich der guoten solde sehen
As where I the good-one should see

in ir ougen minneclîchen: dâ möht lieplîch wunder mir geschehen.
in her eyes lovely: there might lovely wonder to-me happen.

Siht ein wîp in mannes ougen,
(If)-sees a woman into man's eyes,

daz sie des erlât ir minne niht,
that she of-it spares her love not,

Unde er ir hin wider tougen
And he her thither back secretly

in ir liehten, spilnden ougen siht,
into her bright, sparkling eyes sees,

Dâ muoz von der minne mêr geschehen,
There must from the love more happen,

güetlîch triuten unde küssen, dannoch vil,
kindly caressing and kissing, besides much,

des ich niht tar gejehen.
of-which I not dare declare.

LVIII.

LVIII.

Ich bin her bî mînen stunden
I am hither in my hours

ofte worden minnewunt.
often become love-wounded.

Dâ für hân ich helfe funden:
There for have I help found:

des siht man mich wol gesunt,
of-that sees one me well healthy,

Swaz diu Minne mir mit twingen tuot,
Whatever the Love me with compelling does,

dâ für hân ich arzenîe, diu ist guot.
there for have I medicine, which is good.

Sô diu Minne mir verwundet
When the Love to-me wounds

mit ir strâl daz herze mîn,
with her arrow the heart mine,

Daz hât schiere mir gesundet
That has soon for-me healed

mîner frouwen liehter schîn.
my lady's bright shine.

Swenne ich sihe ir liehte varwe klâr,
Whenever I see her bright color clear,

sô sint mir geheilet mîne wunden gar.
so are to-me healed my wounds wholly.

Ich salb mit vil süezer salben
I anoint with very sweet ointment

mîne wunden hie und dort
my wounds here and there

In dem herzen allenthalben.
In the heart everywhere.

diu salb ist manc süezez wort,
the ointment is many-a sweet word,

Diu ûz mîner frouwen munde gânt;
Which out-of my lady's mouth go;

dâ von mînes herzen wunden ende hânt.
there from my heart's wounds end have.

Als ich salben wil diu ougen,
When I anoint will the eyes,

herze, sinne und den lîp,
heart, senses and the body,

Sô gên ich al sunder lougen
So go I all without denial

und sih an daz werde wîp.
and look at the worthy woman.

Dâ von wirt mîn lîp sâ freudenjunc
There from becomes my person at-once joy-young

und muoz mir daz herze springen manegen sprunc.
and must to-me the heart spring many-a leap.

Ûz ir kleinvelrôtem munde
Out-of her small-skinned-red mouth

süeze, süeze, süeze gât:
sweet, sweet, sweet goes:

Die nimt sie in herzen grunde,
Which takes she in heart's ground,

der sie dâ grôz wunder hât.
of-which she there great wonder has.

Sie ist schœne, reine, güetlîch guot:
She is beautiful, pure, kindly good:

ez ist lieplîch, süeze, guot, swaz sie mir tuot.
it is lovely, sweet, good, whatever she me does.

Ich wolt, daz ir liehten ougen
I would, that her bright eyes

in mîn herze möhten sehen.
into my heart might see.

Dâ sæh sie der liebe tougen,
There would-see she of-the love secret,

sô daz sie des müeste jehen,
so that she of-that must declare,

Daz sie mir ist liep für elliu wîp
That she to-me is dear before all women

und für wâr vil lieber dann mîn selbes lîp.
and for true very dearer than my own person.

Got weiz wol, mir ist ir êre
God knows well, to-me is her honor

lieber dann diu êre mîn:
dearer than the honor mine:

Ir lîp ist mîn êren lêre.
Her person is my honors' teaching.

ich wil ir ze dienest sîn
I will to-her to service be

Sunder wenken, al die wîle ich lebe.
Without wavering, all the while I live.

siest mîn trôst für trûren und mîn freuden gebe.
she-is my comfort for sadness and my joys' giver.

1819 Ich wil iu vrowen râten daz,
I will you ladies counsel that,

daz ir iuch nû behüetet baz
that you yourselves now guard better

danne ê vor mannen: des ist iu nôt.
than before from men: of-that is to-you need.

ir zuht ist leider vil nâch tôt:
their courtesy is alas very nearly dead:

si habent fuoge sich bewegen
they have propriety themselves renounced

und wellent kleiner stæte pflegen.
and will of-little steadfastness take-care.

ich râte iu: frâgen unde sehen,
I counsel you: ask and see,

mit zühten merken unde spehen!
with courtesies notice and espy!

Wem ir vil reinen, süezen wîp 1820
To-whom you very pure, sweet women

welt ze freuden iwern lîp
will for joys your person

ze stæter liebe wellent geben
to steadfast love will give

und wem ir welt ze willen leben,
and to-whom you will to will live,

daz sult ir gar bedenken ê,
that shall you wholly consider before,

ê daz die afterriwe ergê.
before that the after-rue comes-to-pass.

ist iu ze gæher liebe gâch,
(if)-is to-you to hasty love hasty,

dâ kumt diu afterriwe nâch.
there comes the after-rue after.

Ir sült bedenken, daz manic man 1821
You shall consider, that many-a man

diu wîp vil wol betriegen kan
the women very well deceive can

und wil daz haben für ein kunst.
and will that hold for a skill.

diu kunst gît unstæte gunst.
the skill gives inconstant favor.

swelch man betriuget wîbes lîp,
whichever man deceives woman's person,

den hazzent elliu guotiu wîp.
him hate all good women.

daz ist reht, wan er gegen in
that is right, for he toward them

treit in hertzen valschen sin.
bears in heart false mind.

1822 Swelch wîp hât sin, diu volget mir,
Whichever woman has sense, she follows me,

daz sî lât sîn ir gæhe gir.
that she lets be her hasty desire.

diu wîp süln gâhes niht gewern
the women shall hastily not grant

und süln lân sîn ir gæhez gern.
and shall let be their hasty desiring.

gæhes dar und gâhes dan
hastily thither and hastily thence

daz êret weder wîp noch man.
that honors neither woman nor man.

nu wizzet, daz unstæter muot
now know, that inconstant spirit

ist weder wîbe noch manne guot.
is neither to-woman nor to-man good.

1823 Ich hân iu nû genuoc geseit
I have you now enough said

von valscher manne unstæticheit.
of false men's inconstancy.

saget ich sîn mêr, daz wær in zorn.
said I of-it more, that were to-them anger.

ich hân ir hulde doch oft verlorn.
I have their favor yet often lost.

dêswâr des mac wol werden rât,
truly of-that may well become remedy,

hân ich ir hulde, an den gar stât,
(if)-have I their favor, on whom wholly stands,

des mir ze freuden gert der lîp:
what to-me for joys desires the person:

daz sint diu reinen, süezen wîp.
those are the pure, sweet women.

Ich wil iu tuon fünf dinc bekant, 1824
I will you make five things known,

swaz herren lebt über elliu lant,
whatever lords live over all lands,

daz sî für wâr habent anders niht,
that they for true have else nothing,

swie rîche man doch ir manigen siht,
however rich one yet of-them many-a-one sees,

daz in von rehte sanfte tuo
that to-them by right gently do

oder daz gelîche sich dar zuo.
or what likens itself there to.

niht anders man gewinnen kan,
nothing else one win can,

daz von rehte tuo wol dem man.
that by right do good to-the man.

XVIII · THE BOOK OF THE SERVICE OF LADIES

The five things are good women, good living, horses, clothes, and crests. Four things men strive for, God's favor, honor, ease, and goods, cannot all be had, and Ulrich counts himself among those who lost all four by wanting them all. He asks the ladies to pray for him, says that he was thirty-three years a knight when the book was first read, that it holds fifty-eight of his songs, and that he wrote it at his lady's command, and names it the Service of Ladies.

Daz eine sint diu vil reinen wîp: 1825
The one are the very pure women:

die gefreunt von rehte des mannes lîp;
who gladden by right the man's person;

daz ander muoz guot lîpnar sîn:
the second must good living be:

ich nim daz ûf di triwe mîn;
I take that on the faithfulness mine;

schœniu ross und guot gewant:
beautiful horses and good clothing:

diu tuont ouch freuden vil bekant;
they make also joys much known;

schœn gezimir tuot ouch wol:
beautiful crest does also well:

dar inne der man freude haben sol.
there in the man joy have shall.

1826 Swer diu dinc elliu fümfiu hât,
Whoever the things all five has,

des muot von schulden hôhe stât:
his spirit by rights high stands:

er ist für wâr ein rîcher man.
he is for true a rich man.

ob er si rehte genützen kan,
if he them rightly use can,

sô wirt er ofte freuden rîch.
so becomes he often of-joys rich.

ich sage iu für wâr endelîch,
I tell you for true truly,

daz er wirt nimmer rîcher man,
that he becomes never rich man,

der sîn guot niht gebiderben kan.
who his goods not use-worthily can.

Noch weiz ich vier dinc, daz ist wâr, 1827
Still know I four things, that is true,

dar nâch die liute alle werbent gar.
there after the people all strive wholly.

swelch wîser man ir einez wil
whichever wise man of-them one will

erwerben, der mac des wol vil
win, he may of-it well much

gewinnen: wizzet, daz nie man
win: know, that never man

si elliu vieriu gar gewan.
them all four wholly won.

si mugen zuo einander niht:
they may to one-another not:

des ist daz werben drumbe enwiht.
of-that is the striving for-it worthless.

Er wær ein sælden rîcher man, 1828
He were a of-bliss rich man,

der disiu vieriu möhte hân:
who these four might have:

des kan ôt leider niht geschehen,
that can just alas not happen,

als ich di wîsen hœre jehen.
as I the wise hear declare.

ietwederz dem andern schaden tuot:
each to-the other harm does:

dâ von ist ez ein tumber muot,
there from is it a foolish spirit,

der si elliu vieriu wænet haben:
who them all four thinks have:

dem ist sîn hôher sin begraben.
to-him is his high sense buried.

1829 Daz eine ist: swer des hulde hât,
The one is: whoever his favor has,

in des gewalt ez allez stât,
in whose power it all stands,

daz ie wart oder immer wirt.
that ever was or ever becomes.

wê im, der sîner hulde enbirt!
woe him, who his favor lacks!

der ist êwiclîch verlorn:
he is eternally lost:

jâ wær er bezzer ungeborn.
yes were he better unborn.

im wirt dort wê und nimmer wol:
to-him becomes there woe and never well:

dâ vor man sich behüeten sol.
there before one himself guard shall.

1830 Daz ander ist diu êre hie,
The second is the honor here,

dâ man ê vaste mit umbe gie;
where one before fast with about went;

daz dritte gemach, daz vierde guot.
the third ease, the fourth goods.

nâch disen vieren al der muot
after these four all the spirit

stât, di iender lebendic sint,
stands, of-those-who anywhere living are,

si sîn alt oder sî sîn kint.
they be old or they be children.

si werbent dar nâch naht unde tac,
they strive there after night and day,

swie sî doch niemen gewinnen mac.
however them yet no-one win may.

Man vindet manigen sô gemuot, 1831
One finds many-a-one so spirited,

daz er gemach, êre unde guot
that he ease, honor and goods

vil gar durch gotes hulde lât.
very wholly for God's favor leaves.

der selbe ist, der daz wægeste hât
the same is, who the best has

im ûz erwelt und ûz erkorn.
for-himself out chosen and out elected.

sîn lîp ist sæliclîch geborn
his person is blessedly born

und ist an witzen gar volkomen,
and is in wits wholly perfect,

sît er daz wægest im hât genomen.
since he the best for-himself has taken.

Vil maniger gotes hulde ouch lât 1832
Very many-a-one God's favor also leaves

dar umbe, daz er hie êre hât:
there for, that he here honor has:

dar umbe verswendet er sîn guot,
there for spends he his goods,

gemach er im vil selten tuot:
ease he himself very seldom does:

in sorgen altet im der lîp.
in sorrows ages to-him the person.

und lobent in man und lobent in wîp,
and praise him man and praise him woman,

dêswâr daz kumt in tiwer an,
truly that comes to-him dear on,

wan ez mit leide muoz ende hân.
for it with sorrow must end have.

1833 Vil maniger solher witze ouch pfliget,
Very many-a-one of-such wit also takes-care,

daz er sich gotes hulde bewiget;
that he himself of-God's favor gives-up;

ern ahtet ouch ûf êre niht,
he heeds also on honor not,

gemach in dunket ouch enwiht;
ease him seems also worthless;

sîn hertze daz ist alsô gemuot:
his heart that is so spirited:

er hât liep für diu driu daz guot
he has dear before the three the goods

und machet des ie mêr unde mê:
and makes of-it ever more and more:

dem ist hie wê und immer wê.
to-him is here woe and ever woe.

1834 Die vierden, die ich iu nennen wil,
The fourth, whom I you name will,

der vindet man ouch leider vil.
of-them finds one also alas many.

die sint alsô diu swîn gemuot,
they are like the swine spirited,

die gotes hulde, êre unde guot
who God's favor, honor and goods

lâzent niht wan durch gemach.
leave nothing but for ease.

ach owê und immer ach!
ah alas and ever ah!

pfy, wie swendet er di zît,
fie, how wastes he the time,

der durch gemach als ein swîn lît!
who for ease as a swine lies!

Daz fünfte hat uns unsælde gegeben: 1835
The fifth has us misfortune given:

daz heizzet daz versûmte leben.
that is-called the neglected life.

der sî wil elliu vieriu hân,
whoever them will all four have,

der muoz si elliu vieriu lân.
he must them all four leave.

er sûmt sich hie und sûmt sich dort,
he neglects himself here and neglects himself there,

ern hât die mitte, ern hât daz ort.
he-not has the middle, he-not has the end.

er trüege im selben billîch haz,
he would-bear to-him self rightly hate,

sît er hât weder ditz noch daz.
since he has neither this nor that.

Der selben bin ich einer gar: 1836
Of-the same am I one wholly:

ich lebt alsô mîniu jâr,
I lived so my years,

daz ich durch der deheinez nie
that I for of-them any never

diu andern driu noch nie verlie.
the other three yet never left.

ich het des muot und hets ouch wân,
I had of-it mind and had-it also hope,

ich möht si elliu vieriu hân.
I might them all four have.

der selbe wân mich triuget noch,
the same hope me deceives still,

und bin dâ mit geeffet doch.
and am there with fooled yet.

1837 Eines tages wil ich im
Of-one day will I him

dienen, der mir sêle, lîp und sin
serve, who me soul, body and mind

hât gegeben und swaz ich hân;
has given and whatever I have;

des andern wil ich als ein man
of-the second will I as a man

erwerben êre, dar nâch guot:
win honor, there after goods:

sus ungelîche stât mîn muot;
thus unlike stands my spirit;

des vierden wil ich hân gemach:
of-the fourth will I have ease:

in disem leben man mich ie sach.
in this life one me ever saw.

1838 Ich bin doch niht sô tœresch gar,
I am yet not so foolish wholly,

daz ich sus swende mîniu jâr,
that I thus waste my years,

ich neme hier ûz daz wægeste doch;
I take here out-of the best yet;

wan daz ich einem wîbe noch
but that I a woman still

diene: diu ist mir sam der lîp
serve: who is to-me like the body

und lieber vil danne elliu wîp.
and dearer much than all women.

in der dienst die sêle mîn
in her service the soul mine

wil ich noch fürbaz wâgent sîn.
will I still further venturing be.

Mîn geloube ist sunder spot, 1839
My belief is without mockery,

daz der vil reine, süeze got
that the very pure, sweet God

durch die vil hôhe tugende sîn
for the very high virtues his

bedenke an mir die triwe mîn,
consider in me the faithfulness mine,

die ich gegen der guoten trage.
which I toward the good-one bear.

jâ dien ich ir gar mîne tage
yes serve I her wholly my days

mit triwen âne valschen list.
with faithfulness without false cunning.

got weiz wol, daz si mir liep ist.
God knows well, that she to-me dear is.

Si ist mir liep für elliu dinc, 1840
She is to-me dear before all things,

si ist mîner freuden ursprinc,
she is of-my joys source,

si ist mîner freuden ende alsô,
she is of-my joys end so,

daz ich âne sî wirde nimmer vrô.
that I without her become never glad.

durch sî ich bî der werlde bin:
for her I by the world am:

var ich her oder var ich hin,
(if)-go I hither or (if)-go I thither,

sô dien ich ir doch mîniu jâr
so serve I her yet my years

mit triwen sunder wenken gar.
with faithfulness without wavering wholly.

1841 Daz wolde got, ir süezen wîp,
That would God, you sweet women,

möhte iu erwünschen des mîn lîp,
might for-you wish of-that my person,

swelhiu under iu wolt haben man,
whichever among you would have man,

daz des wille wære gein ir getân,
that his will were toward her done,

als mir mîn wille gegen ir ist,
as to-me my will toward her is,

der ich diene âne valschen list
whom I serve without false cunning

und immer gerne dienen wil
and ever gladly serve will

mit triwen an mîn endes zil.
with faithfulness until my end's goal.

1842 Ich wünsche iu vrowen mîne tage,
I wish you ladies my days,

daz gar mit freuden âne klage
that wholly with joys without lament

iwer lîp hie lange lebe
your person here long live

und daz iu got sîn rîche dort gebe.
and that you God his kingdom there give.

dâ wider sô sult wünschen ir
there against so shall wish you

mit lûterlîchem hertzen mir,
with pure heart me,

daz mir mîn vrowe genædic sî.
that to-me my lady gracious be.

sô wird ich ouch hie leides vrî.
so become I also here of-sorrow free.

Ir sult ouch des vergezen niht, 1843
You shall also of-that forget not,

habe iu mîn lîp gedienet iht.
(if)-have you my person served anything.

mit süezen worten mîne tage
with sweet words my days

iwer lop ich singe, iwer lop ich sage
your praise I sing, your praise I tell

mit triwen, sô ich beste kan.
with faithfulness, as I best can.

got wolt, wærn iu alle man
God would, were to-you all men

mit triwen holt, als ich iu bin:
with faithfulness devoted, as I to-you am:

sô gienge iwer zît mit freuden hin.
so went your time with joys thither.

Ich bit iuch durch die werdicheit, 1844
I bid you for the worthiness,

der got hât vil an iuch geleit,
which God has much on you laid,

daz ir got bitet umbe mich,
that you God ask for me,

daz er durch iuch erbarme sich
that he for you pity himself

über mich, als ich gelebe
over me, as I live

mîne zît, daz er mir gebe
my time, that he me give

rehtez ende und sölhen sin,
right end and such mind,

daz mîn sêle var mit freuden hin.
that my soul go with joys thither.

1845 Ir sült gelouben mir für wâr:
You shall believe me for true:

ich was driu unde drîzic jâr
I was three and thirty years

ritter ritterlîch gewesen,
knight knightly been,

dô man ditz buoch hôrt niwez lesen,
when one this book heard new read,

alsô daz ichz voltihtet gar.
so that I-it composed-fully wholly.

nu nemen die vrowen drinne war,
now take the ladies therein heed,

ob ich gesungen und geseit
whether I sung and said

dar inne iht habe ir werdecheit.
there in anything have their worthiness.

1846 Zweier minner sehtzic dœne ich hân
Two less-than sixty tunes I have

gesungen: die stânt gar hier an.
sung: they stand wholly here on.

dar inne sô hât sich mîn lîp
there in so has itself my person

geflizen vil, daz ich guotiu wîp
striven much, that I good women

hân gelobt reht als ein man,
have praised right as a man,

der in wol aller êren gan
who to-them well all honors grants

und der ir hôhe werdecheit
and who their high worthiness

mit triwen gerne machet breit.
with faithfulness gladly makes broad.

Swaz ich in niuwen dœnen ie 1847
Whatever I in new tunes ever

dar von gesanc, daz vindet man hie
there of sang, that finds one here

allez an dem buoche stân.
all in the book stand.

noch wil ich vrowen lop niht lân:
yet will I ladies' praise not leave:

ich wil si gerne loben mê.
I will them gladly praise more.

swer welle, daz ez hier an stê,
whoever wants, that it here on stand,

swenne ichz gesinge, der schrîbe ez dran:
whenever I-it sing, he write it thereon:

der hât sîn zuht dar an getân.
he has his courtesy there on done.

Mîn heil sî vor der hœhsten hant 1848
My salvation be before the highest hand

ze einer wârheit des mîn pfant,
for a truth of-that my pledge,

daz ich ditz buoch getihtet hân,
that I this book composed have,

daz michs mîn vrowe niht wolt erlân.
that me-it my lady not would spare.

diu reine, süeze gebôt ez mir:
the pure, sweet-one commanded it me:

hie mit hân ich gedienet ir.
here with have I served her.

und getorst ich sîs verzigen hân,
and dared I her-it refused have,

sô wær ez von mir ungetân.
so were it by me undone.

1849 Ich weiz wol, daz ez missestât,
I know well, that it misbecomes,

daz mîn munt von mir selben hât
that my mouth of me self has

getihtet ritterlîche tât:
composed knightly deed:

dô moht ôt ichs niht haben rât;
then might just I-it not have dispensing;

wan michs betwanc vil grôziu nôt,
for me-it compelled very great need,

daz mirz diu vrowe mîn gebôt.
that me-it the lady mine commanded.

swaz sî gebiutet, des sol ich
whatever she commands, of-that shall I

mit triwen immer flîzzen mich.
with faithfulness ever strive myself.

1850 Ditz buoch sol guoter wîbe sîn:
This book shall good women's be:

in hât dar an die zunge mîn
to-them has there on the tongue mine

gesprochen vil manic süezez wort.
spoken very many-a sweet word.

ez sol reht sîn ir lobes hort:
it shall rightly be their praise's hoard:

ir lop kan dran wol stîgen hô,
their praise can thereon well climb high,

ez sol si vil oft machen vrô.
it shall them very often make glad.

VROWEN DIENST ist ez genant:
OF-LADIES SERVICE is it named:

dâ bî sô sol ez sîn bekant.
there by so shall it be known.
